

ENGLISH

الصف السادس الابتدائي

الفصل الدراسي الثاني

20
26



6th
PRIMARY
SECOND TERM

دار غزة

للطباعة والنشر والتوزيع

ghazzahouse@gmail.com



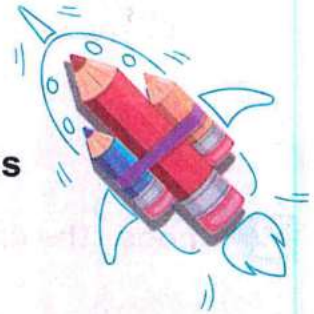
Contents

6

Primary

Part 1

- Specifications for Primary Six
- Punctuation
- Writing skills
- Tips to answer the comprehension questions
- **Unit 1: Celebrating Creativity**
- **Unit 2: Wonderful Inventions**
- **Unit 3: Hidden Gems of Egypt**
- **Review 1**



Part 2

- **Unit 4: Egypt on the Move**
- **Unit 5: Safe and Smart Transportation for Egypt's Future**
- **Unit 6: Story Time: The Library That Time Forgot**
- **Review 2**
- **Listening material**
- **Booklet**
- **Dictation**
- **Exercises and Tests**
- **Final Tests**



Specifications for Sixth Year Primary

مواصفات امتحان الصف السادس الابتدائي ٢٠٢٥ - ٢٠٢٦

Marks: 30

Time: One hour and a half

A- Listening (2 Marks)

1 Listen and write (T)True or (F) False: (2 Marks)

استمع واكتب صواب أو خطأ :

A listening text of about **SEVENTY (70)** words at the appropriate difficulty level for primary **SIX** followed by **FOUR (4)** sentences is provided. Topics should be related to the Set Books. Learners are asked to listen to the text and write (T)True or (F) False.

(Half a mark each)

B- Reading (13 Marks)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (2 Marks)

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة :

FOUR (4) MCQs (2 vocabulary and 2 structure) based on the Set Books are provided. Learners are asked to choose the correct answer from the **FOUR (4)** options given.

(Half a mark each)

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2 Marks)

اقرأ واكمل النص بالكلمات التي في الاطار :

An unseen text from **SIXTY (60)** to **SEVENTY (70)** words with **FOUR (4)** deletions is provided. **FIVE (5)** words related to vocabulary are also given in a box. Learners are asked to complete each deletion in the text with **ONE (1)** of the **FIVE (5)** words given.

The first sentence should be written in full.

(Half a mark each)

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (7 Marks)

اقرأ النص واجب عن الاسئلة :

An unseen literary or informational text from **NINETY (90)** to **ONE HUNDRED (100)** words is provided. The text should be at the appropriate difficulty level for **Primary SIX**. Learners are asked to answer:

A. TWO (2) MCQs with **FOUR (4)** options each

(Half a mark each)

B. THREE (3) open-ended

(2 marks each)

The questions should test the following reading comprehension skills:

- Identify the general idea of the text.
- Demonstrate understanding of specific details in a text.
- Determine the meaning of words and phrases in a text.
- Make logical inferences from the text.
- Summarize the key supporting details and ideas in a text.

C- Writing (17 Marks)

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4 Marks)

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

TWO (2) structure sentences related to what learners have studied are provided. Learners are asked to complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) given between brackets. (2 marks each)

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (2 Marks)

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملاً:

TWO (2) scrambled statements of not less than **SIX (6)** words each are provided. Learners are asked to order the words to form correct sentences. (One mark each)

7 Punctuate the following: (4 Marks)

ضع علامات الترقيم للاثي:

TWO (2) simple statements (a sentence or a question) of about **SIX (6)** words each are provided. Each statement has **TWO (2)** missing punctuation marks (**Capital Letter / Full Stop / Question Mark / Comma**). Learners are asked to punctuate them correctly

(2 marks each)

8 Write a text of **SIXTY (60)** words using the words below: (7 Marks)

اكتب فقرة انشائية من (٦٠) كلمة:

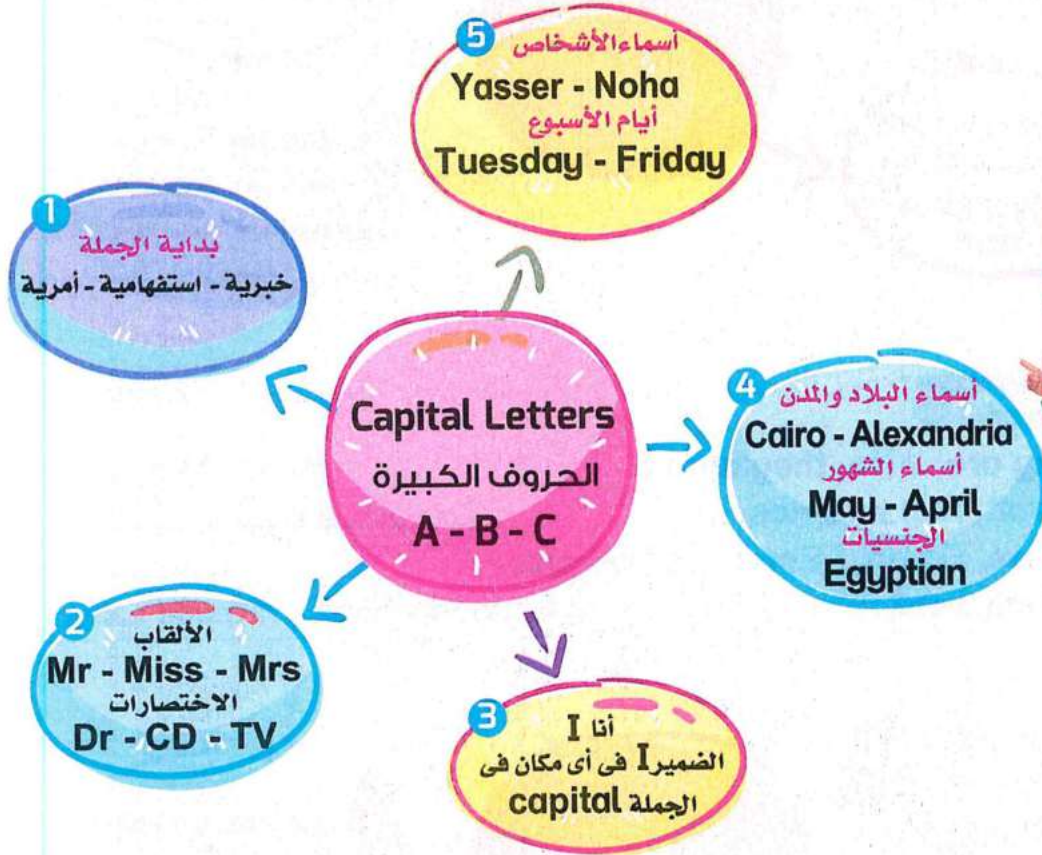
Learners are asked to write not less than **SIXTY (60)** words related to a specific topic using **TWO (2)** guiding elements that can be phrases, questions, tables.... etc. in **ONE (1)** of the following writing forms:

Informal email/paragraph/story/biography.

(Two marks for relevance of ideas – Two marks for vocabulary- One mark for grammar – One mark for spelling- One mark for punctuation

Punctuation

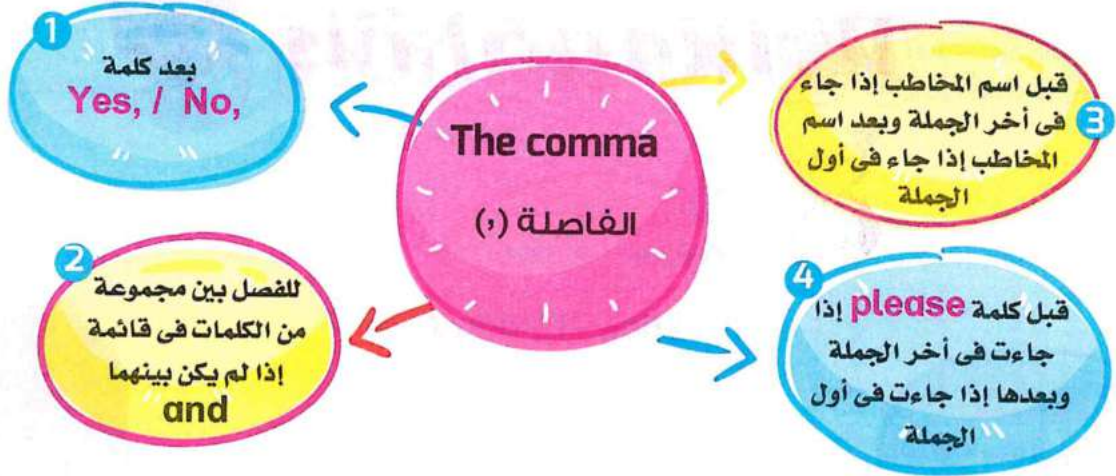
علامات الترقيم



Examples:

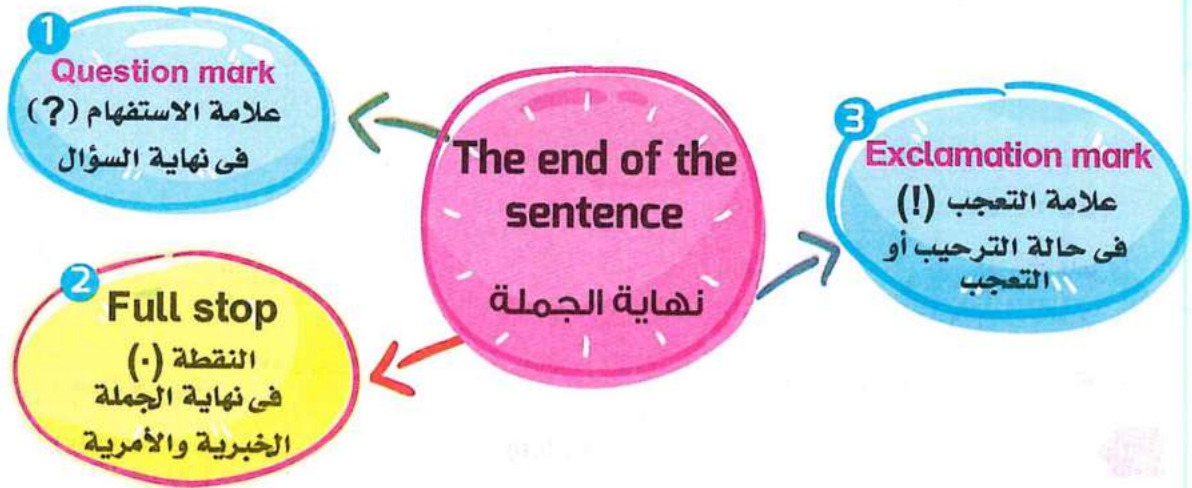
1. **S**ameh is a teacher. (جملة خبرية)
2. **C**lose your book. (جملة أمرية)
3. **W**here's your house? (جملة استفهامية)
4. **I** want some water. **I**'m thirsty. (الضمير I)
5. We visited **C**airo in **M**arch. (أسماء مدن وشهور)
6. **M**r Tamer plays tennis on **W**ednesday. (الألقاب وأيام الأسبوع)

Punctuation



Examples:

- Yes, they are. / No, they aren't. (بعد Yes, / No,)
- I want fruit, fish and rice. (للفصل بين مجموعة كلمات في قائمة)
- Come here, Eman. / Eman, come here. (اسم مخاطب)
- Give me this book, please. / Please, give me this book. (كلمة Please)



Examples

1. We are friends. (جملة خبرية)
2. Close the window. (جملة أمرية)
3. How are you, Karim? (جملة استفهامية)
4. Hello! Nabil. (علامة تعجب)

Writing Skills



How to write a paragraph كيف تكتب فقرة انشائية

كيفية الإجابة على سؤال (paragraph)

يطلب من التلاميذ كتابة موضوع من ٦٠ كلمة من موضوعات كتاب المدرسة لذلك نقدم شرح لكيفية التعامل مع هذا السؤال:

• حتى تكون الجملة بشكل صحيح يجب أن نتعلم مكونات الجملة وترتيبها في اللغة الإنجليزية حيث تتكون من:

أولاً ترتيب الجملة

تكملة الجملة	فعل	فاعل
ظرف مكان - زمان / صفة / حال home / yesterday happy / well	ماضي بسيط / مستمر was doing / did	مضارع بسيط / مستمر is going / go / goes
	شيء	مكان
	أسم شخص	
	Car	Garden Ahmed

ثانياً صيغ الجمل المختلفة

صفة + verb to be + فاعل	He is excited.
وظيفة + verb to be + فاعل	Gamal is a doctor.
مكان + حرف جر + فعل + فاعل	She went to the party.
زمن + حرف جر + فعل + فاعل	We are ready on Sunday.
مفعول + فعل + فاعل	I help her.
الساعة + حرف جر + فعل + فاعل	We get up at 7 o'clock.

Write a text of about Sixty (60) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٦٠ كلمة عن:

Guiding questions

- 1- When's your birthday?
- 2- Where's your birthday?

Your birthday party

Yesterday was my birthday. I made a big party at my garden. I have a nice garden around my house. My mother prepared some sandwiches. My father bought a chocolate cake. I liked it very much. My friends came to the party. We sang songs and danced. We played video games and football. It was a nice day.



How to write an email كيف تكتب إيميل

To: البريد الإلكتروني الخاص بالمرسل إليه:

From: البريد الإلكتروني الخاص بالراسل:

Subject: موضوع أو عنوان الرسالة:

Dear + اسم المرسل إليه ,
How are you? I want to tell you about

----- تكتب هنا موضوع الإيميل -----

See you soon.
اسم الراسل

- اتبع الخطوات الآتية لكتابة بريد إلكتروني بشكل منظم:

١- في السطر الأول من بريدك الإلكتروني أبدأ بكلمة "Dear" أو "Hi" ثم اكتب اسم المرسل إليه:

٢- في السطر الثاني أبدأ بـ: "I'm happy to write to you."

"Thanks for writing to me."

٣- أسأل عن أحوال صديقك بـ:

"How are you?" / "How are things?" / "How's life?"

٤- اذكر سبب إرسالك للإيميل ولماذا كتبت:

I want to tell you about -----

٥- يجب أن يحتوي بريدك الإلكتروني على فكرة واحدة فقط وليس أكثر من فكرة:

٦- عند الكتابة إلى صديق يمكنك استخدام لغة غير رسمية مثل كلمات: "awesome" أو "cool"

٧- قم بإنهاء بريدك الإلكتروني بعبارات مثل: "Write soon." أو "See you soon."

أو "By for you now." أو "Hope to hear from you soon."

لاحظ

بعض التحويلات الآتية عند كتابة البريد الإلكتروني:

١- إذا كان في السؤال كلمة him أو her أو them قم بتحويلها في الإيميل إلى كلمة you.

٢- إذا كان في السؤال كلمة your نحولها إلى كلمة my.

٣- إذا كان في السؤال كلمة you نحولها إلى كلمة I.



How to write a biography

كيف تكتب سيرة ذاتية

- لكتابة السيرة الذاتية عن شخص رياضي (مثلاً) نستخدم بعض المصطلحات والعبارات للتعريف بالشخص الرياضي:

- 1- He / She was born on + تاريخ الميلاد.
- 2- He / She began بدأ.
- 3- He / She was the first كان أول شخص .
- 4- He / She is successful because يعتبر شخص ناجح لأنه .
- 5- He / She won فاز - فازت به .
- 6- He / She also / Moreover / as well as / هو بالإضافة إلى / علاوة على ذلك / بالإضافة إلى ذلك .

وفيما يلي نموذج لسيرة ذاتية (Biography) عن شخص رياضي (Mohamed Salah):

Mohamed Salah is a famous football player. He was born on June 15, 1992. He began playing football when he was young. He is a successful sportsperson because he trained a lot to win awards. He also helps poor people in his village.



How to write a story

1. Step 1: Create a character and a setting. حدد شخصيات ومكان وزمن القصة.

2. Step 2: The Beginning. بداية القصة...

ابداً بجمل مثل

Once/Once upon a time/One day

3. Step 3: The Problem. المشكلة التي حدثت بالقصة...

4. Step 4: The solution. الحل...

5. Step 5: The End. النهاية

Once Karma and her sister Fatma were playing in the park. Karma found an apple on a tree. She picked it and was happy. Fatma felt sad because she didn't have an apple. Karma decided to share the apple with her sister. Finally, they were happy and they ate the apple.

Tips to answer the comprehension questions

إرشادات للإجابة عن أسئلة قطعة الفهم

أولاً: أسئلة الاختيار من متعدد (multiple-choice)

1 قد يطلب منك تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية (main idea) في النص من خلال صيغ مثل:

- The main idea of the passage is.....
- The passage is mainly about.....

وعليك أن تختار الإجابة الصحيحة من أربعة اختيارات تُعطى لك.

كيف تجد الفكرة الرئيسية في النص

- هي النقطة الأساسية التي يكرر الكاتب الحديث عنها.
- تكون جملة وليست سؤالاً.
- الجمل الأخرى في النص تعطى تفاصيل ومعلومات عنها.
- غالباً تكون في أول جملة أو آخر جملة في النص.

لاحظ المثال الآتي

- ما باللون الأحمر هي الفكرة الرئيسية وما باللون الأزرق هي التفاصيل عنها.

Yesterday, I got **a new coat**. My **new coat** is **blue** and **red**. My coat is **very nice** and keeps me warm. On the back, there is a **picture of a snow man**. I will wear **my coat** to school.

2 قد يقوم واضع الامتحان بإضافة خط تحت أحد الكلمات في جملة معينة في القطعة ثم تجد سؤال اختيار من متعدد يقول: الكلمة الموضوع تحتها خط تشير إلى

- The underlined word '.....' refers to

ثانياً: أسئلة (open-ended) استفسامية

3 قد يطلب واضع الامتحان منك تلخيصاً (summarize) لأحد الفقرات في النص في جملة واحدة بالصيغة الآتية:

- Summarize the first / second / third paragraph (into one sentence).

كيف تلخص فقرة إلى جملة أو أكثر

- 1- حدد اسم الشخص أو الشئ أو الحيوان الأساسي بالفقرة المطلوب تلخيصها
- 2- حدد أهم شئ يخص ذلك الشخص أو الشئ أو الحيوان واستخدم أهم الأفعال بالفقرة للتعبير عن ذلك وممكن استخدام أفعال أخرى تؤدي نفس المعنى.
- 3- استبعد الأفكار الفرعية أو الغير أساسية أو المعلومات الأقل أهمية
- 4- أكتب الفكرة الأساسية في حدود خمسة كلمات أو حسب ما يطلب

1- Summarize the first paragraph of the text in two lines.

Tourists come to Egypt to see the Pyramids, temples and other monuments. It is a wonderful visit for them. Tourists also come to see the wonderful natural world such as the desert and the Red Sea.

تتبع الخطوات السابقة:

١- الفقرة تتعلق بشكل أساسي بالسائحين **tourists**

٢- أهم ما يخصصهم هو زيارة مصر والأماكن السياحية بها والأفعال التي تعبر عن ذلك **come / see / visit**

٣- استبعد المعلومات الأقل أهمية من كل جملة.

٤- قم بكتابة تلخيص الفقرة

Summary

Tourists come to Egypt to see the Pyramids and the wonderful natural world such as the Red Sea.

2- Summarize the last paragraph in one sentence of your own words.

My father enjoys playing football with his friends. He believes in doing sports and teaches us the same. He wants me to be clever at school. I want to make him feel proud of me one day.

١- أهم شخص **My father**

٢- وأهم شيء يخصه أنه يؤمن بممارسة الرياضة ويريدني أن أتفوق في دراستي.

٣- استبعد المعلومات الأقل أهمية من كل جملة.

٤ - قم بكتابة تلخيص الفقرة.

Summary

My father thinks that doing sports is very important and he wants me to be clever at school.

Unit 1

Celebrating Creativity

الاحتفال بالإبداع

Learning Outcomes

Speaking

- Discuss and share thoughts about art, artists, and museums
يناقش الطالب ويشارك الأفكار حول الفن والفنانين، والمتاحف
- Use art-related vocabulary to describe ideas for an art studio and different types of art
يستخدم الطالب المفردات المتعلقة بالفن لوصف أفكار لاستوديوهات وأنواع مختلفة من الفن.
- Express and justify opinions clearly when talking about artwork and creativity
يعبر الطالب عن الآراء ويبررها بوضوح عند التحدث عن الأعمال الفنية والإبداع

Listening

- Understand the main ideas and specific details in short spoken texts about art
يفهم الطالب الأفكار الرئيسية والتفاصيل المحددة في نصوص منطوقة حوارية قصيرة حول الفن.
- Answer questions based on short listening passages about artists or art studios
يجيب الطالب عن أسئلة على مقاطع استماع قصيرة عن فنانين أو استوديوهات فنية.
- Count the number of syllables in spoken words and identify two and three-syllable words.
يعد الطالب عدد المقاطع الصوتية في الكلمات المنطوقة ويحدد الكلمات المكونة من مقطعين أو ثلاثة مقاطع.

Reading

- Read and understand short texts about art galleries, art studios, and famous artists
يقرأ الطالب ويفهم نصوصاً قصيرة عن المعارض الفنية، والاستوديوهات الفنية، والفنانين المشهورين.
- Identify and define key vocabulary words related to art and creativity
يحدد الطالب ويعرف الكلمات المفتاحية من المفردات المتعلقة بالفن والإبداع
- Extract specific information from a text to answer comprehension questions
يستخرج الطالب معلومات محددة من نص للإجابة على أسئلة الفهم.
- Analyze a short dialog and arrange events in the correct order
يحلل الطالب حواراً قصيراً ويرتب الأحداث بالترتيب الصحيح.

Writing

- Write sentences correctly using new art-related vocabulary
يكتب الطالب جملًا بشكل صحيح باستخدام مفردات جديدة متعلقة بالفن
- Use conjunctions pairs (both...and, either...or, neither...nor) accurately in sentences
يستخدم الطالب حروف العطف (كل من...و، إما...أو، لا...ولا) بدقة في الجمل.
- Write a short paragraph about creating an artwork, describing the process and inspiration
يكتب الطالب فقرة قصيرة حول إنشاء عمل فني، واصفاً العملية والإلهام.
- Design a poster about a famous place in Egypt.
يصمم الطالب ملصقاً عن مكان مشهور في مصر.

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



whisper

يهمس



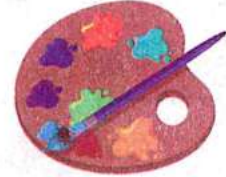
canvas

لوحة قماش / قماش الرسم



paintbrush

فرشاة الرسم



palette

لوحة الألوان



carve

ينحت



sculpture

نحت / منحوتة / تمثال



masterpiece

تحفة فنية



art gallery

معرض فني

artist

فنان

pottery

خزف / فخار

statue

تمثال

mural

لوحة جدارية (ترسم على الجدران)

inspired

مُلهم



Other words

كلمات أخرى

visit

زيارة

huge

ضخم / هائل

excited

متحمس

painting

لوحة (فنية) / رسم

giant

عملاق / ضخم جدًا

wooden

خشبي

strong

قوي / متين

hammer

شاكوش

powerful

قوي / مؤثر

strange

غريب

ancient

قديم

colorful

ملون / زاهي الألوان

bright

مشرق / لامع

own

يملك / خاص به

wish

يتمنى

tool

أداة

skill

مهارة

board

لوح

surface

سطح

true

صحيح / حقيقي

final

نهائي / أخير

Expressions, prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر

look like	يُشبهه / يبدو مثل	go home	يذهب إلى المنزل
look at	ينظر إلى	right away	حالاً / فوراً
on the wall	على الحائط / على الجدار	shape wood or stone	يشكل الخشب أو الحجر
point to	يُشير إلى	make art	يصنع الفن / يُنشئ عملاً فنياً
piece of art	قطعة فنية / عمل فني	on a canvas	على قماش الرسم

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ & P.P.	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	P.P. التصريف الثالث
whisper يهمس	whispered	know يعرف	knew	known
point يُشير	pointed	take يأخذ	took	taken
dislike لا يُحب / يكره	disliked	draw يرسم	drew	drawn
mix يمزج / يخلط	mixed	see يرى	saw	seen
display يعرض (للجمهور)	displayed	hear يسمع	heard	heard
admire يُعجب بـ	admired			
call يُسمّي / يدعو	called			
carve ينحت	carved			

Definitions

تعريفات

whisper يهمس	to speak quietly so only one or two people could hear
canvas قماش الرسم	the surface (often cloth) an artist paints on
paintbrush فرشاة الرسم	a soft tool used by artists to put paint on a picture
palette لوحة الألوان	a flat board artists use to mix colors
carve ينحت	to cut or shape wood or stone to make art
sculpture تمثال / منحوتة	a piece of art made by shaping stone, wood, or metal
masterpiece تحفة فنية	a beautiful piece of art made with great skill

Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 used to + inf. مصدر الفعل.

اعتماد أن

- فعل شئ في الماضي ولكنه لا يحدث الآن:

- He **used to** carve statues.

2 I wish I + فعل في الماضي البسيط

أتمنى لو كنت

- تستخدم للتحدث عما نريد أو نرغب به في الوقت الحاضر ولكننا نعلم أنه غير واقعي أو مستحيل:

- I **wish I** had my paintbrush and palette with me right now!

Study the following

1 Lily was a young artist who loved to draw.

كانت ليلي فنانة شابة تحب الرسم.

2 Lily's family took her to an art gallery.

اصطحبت العائلة ليلي إلى صالة عرض فنية.

3 She saw these huge paintings on a canvas.

رأت لوحات ضخمة على قماش الرسم.

4 I wish I had my paintbrush and palette with me right now!

أتمنى لو كانت فرشاة الرسم ولوحة الألوان معي حالياً

5 They walked into a room with beautiful pottery and a giant wooden statue.

دخلوا إلى غرفة بها خزف (فخار) جميل وتمثال خشبي عملاق.

6 Lily loved a strange, colorful sculpture.

أعجبت ليلي بمنحوتة غريبة وزاهية الألوان.

7 She saw a huge, bright mural on the wall.

رأت جدارية ضخمة ومشرقة على الحائط.

8 Lily felt so inspired by everything she saw.

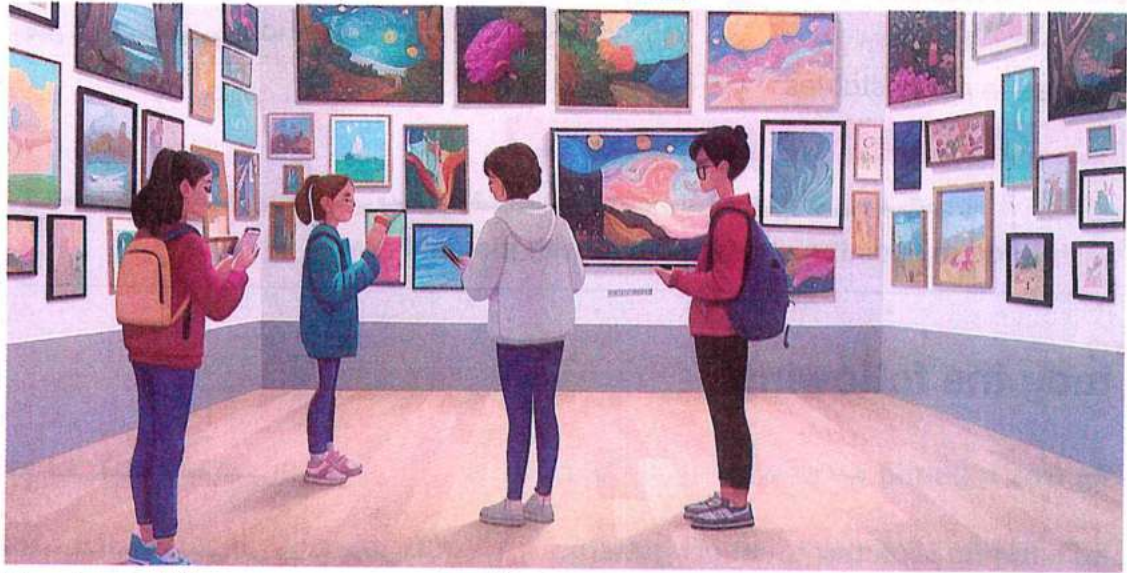
شعرت ليلي بالإلهام الشديد من كل ما رآته.

9 Lily's mom called a very old painting a "masterpiece".

وصفت والددة ليلي لوحة قديمة جداً بأنها «تحفة فنية».

Tape Script

استمع إلى النص:



You know, Lily was a young **artist**⁽¹⁾ who loved to draw. So, one Saturday, her family took her to, uh, a big **art gallery**⁽²⁾. Oh, she was so **excited**!⁽³⁾

تعلم أن، ليلي كانت فنانة شابة تحب الرسم. وفي يوم سبت، اصطحبتها عائلتها إلى معرض فني كبير. يا إلهي، كانت متحمسة جدًا!

"Wow," she **whispered**.⁽⁴⁾ "Look at that!" First, she saw these huge **paintings**⁽⁵⁾ on a **canvas**⁽⁶⁾. "Mmm," she said, "I wish I had my **paintbrush**⁽⁷⁾ and **palette**⁽⁸⁾ with me right now!" Then, they walked into a room with beautiful **pottery**⁽⁹⁾ and a **giant wooden statue**⁽¹⁰⁾ that an artist used to **carve**⁽¹¹⁾. It looked so strong and **powerful**!⁽¹²⁾

همست ليلي قائلة: «يا للروعة! انظر إلى ذلك!» أولاً، رأت تلك اللوحات الضخمة المرسومة على الكانفاس (قماش الرسم). قالت: «ممم، أتمنى لو كانت فرشاة الرسم ولوحة الألوان معي حالياً!» ثم ساروا إلى غرفة بها خزف (فخار) جميل وتمثال خشبي عملاق اعتاد الفنان أن ينحته. بدا التمثال قوياً ومؤثراً للغاية!

Lily also loved a strange, colorful **sculpture**⁽¹³⁾. She even saw a huge, bright **mural**⁽¹⁴⁾ on the wall. Her mom pointed to a very old painting. "This," she said, "is a **masterpiece**⁽¹⁵⁾." Lily felt so **inspired**⁽¹⁶⁾ by everything she saw. She couldn't wait to go home and start her own masterpiece right away!

أحبت ليلي أيضاً منحوتة غريبة وملونة. حتى أنها رأت جدارية ضخمة ومشقة على الحائط. أشارت أمها إلى لوحة قديمة جداً وقالت: "هذه تحفة فنية." شعرت ليلي بالإلهام الشديد من كل ما رآته. لم تستطع الانتظار للعودة إلى المنزل وبدء تحفتها الفنية فوراً!

Arabic Meaning

- ١- فنان
- ٢- معرض فني
- ٣- متحمس
- ٤- همست
- ٥- لوحات
- ٦- الكانفاس (قماش الرسم)
- ٧- فرشاة الرسم
- ٨- لوحة الألوان
- ٩- فخار/خزف
- ١٠- تمثال خشبي ضخم
- ١١- ينحت
- ١٢- قوي/مؤثر
- ١٣- منحوتة
- ١٤- لوحة جدارية
- ١٥- تحفة فنية
- ١٦- ملهم

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The artist used a to mix red, blue, and yellow colors. SB
 a masterpiece b palette c sculpture d canvas
2. The teacher asked the students to paint on a large SB
 a paintbrush b lunchbox c canvas d hammer
3. The little girl a secret to her best friend during art class. SB
 a whispered b shouted c called d pointed
4. The museum displayed a beautiful stone of an ancient king. SB
 a palette b canvas c paintbrush d sculpture
5. The artist's final painting was a true that everyone admired. SB
 a tool b masterpiece c gallery d colors
6. A is a tool used by artists to paint on a picture.
 a pottery b mural c sculpture d paintbrush
7. Hady used to statues out of stone.
 a mix b admire c carve d whisper
8. I saw a strange sculpture at the
 a zoo b cinema c park d art gallery
9. I was so that I drew a new picture right away.
 a angry b bored c inspired d sad
10. We cleaned the wall before painting the
 a wood b mural c palette d masterpiece

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

wish - masterpiece - display - colorful - carve

My visit to the gallery was inspired by ancient art. I saw a bright, ① pottery piece. The artist used a special tool to ② beautiful patterns into the surface. I knew it was a true ③ from long ago. I ④ I could make art like that.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة:

Mariam is my best friend. She loves to develop her skill as a young artist. Every week, she makes sure to visit the local art gallery to feel inspired. When she is there, she looks at the masterpieces and the colorful murals on the wall. She tries to learn how to carve the giant statues and create the small pottery. She often makes a wish to start working immediately! When she goes home, she takes out her paintbrush and palette right away to make art based on what she saw.

A. Choose the correct answer:

- Mariam goes to the every week.
☐ a cinema ☐ b museum ☐ c art gallery ☐ d library
- Mariam is a young
☐ a student ☐ b actress ☐ c artist ☐ d pilot

B. Answer the following questions:

- What is the main idea of the text?
- Why does she visit the local art gallery?
- How often does she visit the local art gallery?

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

- sculpture - loved - a strange, - Lily - colorful
- had - wish - I - paintbrush - my - I
- art gallery - took - an - Lily's family - her - to
- visiting - inspired - Celin - felt - the gallery - after.
- mural - wall - Ahmed - saw - on - a - the

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يأتي:

- the artist used a palette to mix colors
- where did you go yesterday

6 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٦٠) كلمة عن:

Your visit to an art gallery

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

- When did you visit the galley?
- What did you see there?

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المضردات:



frame	إطار	artwork	عمل فني / تحفة فنية
talent	موهبة	famous	مشهور
creativity	إبداع	photograph	صورة فوتوغرافية



Other words

كلمات أخرى

special	خاص / مميز	forever	إلى الأبد / للأبد
beautiful	جميل	modern	حديث / عصري
image	صورة	visitor	زائر
type	نوع	quietly	بهدوء
boring	ممل	feeling	شعور
difficult	صعب	imagination	خيال
great	عظيم	figure	تمثال / مجسم
poem	قصيدة	clay	صلصال / طين
painter	رسام	museum	متحف
exciting	مشوق	creative	مبدع
project	مشروع	crowded	مزدحم
studio	مرسم (مكان عمل الرسام)		



Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعابير وأحرف جر وعبارات

seem alive	يبدو وكأنها حية	make shapes	يشكل أشكالاً
full of	مليء بـ	instead of	بدلاً من

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع	
create	يُخلق / يُنشئ
prefer	يُفضل
remember	يتذكر
enjoy	يستمتع بـ
describe	يصف
practice	يتدرب / يمارس

Past ماضٍ & P.P.

created
preferred
remembered
enjoyed
described
practiced

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	P.P. التصريف الثالث
tell يُخبر / يقول	told	told
become يُصبح	became	become
stand يقف	stood	stood
find يجد	found	found
buy يشتري	bought	bought
show يُظهر / يعرض	showed	shown

Definitions

تعريفات

carve	ينحت	shape
whisper	يهمس	speak quietly
canvas	قماش الرسم	painting surface
masterpiece	تحفة فنية	great work of art
palette	لوحة الألوان	a board of paint

Study the following

- Every frame tells a story. كل إطار يحكي قصة.
- Inside a frame, there can be either a painting or a photograph. داخل الإطار، يمكن أن توجد لوحة فنية أو صورة فوتوغرافية.
- Artists use their paintbrush and palette to mix colors. يستخدم الفنانون فرشاة الرسم و لوحة الألوان لمزج الألوان.
- Artists create beautiful images on a canvas. يُنشئ الفنانون صوراً جميلة على الكانفاس (قماش الرسم).
- Both painting and sculpture show talent and creativity. يُظهر كلا من الرسم والنحت موهبة وإبداعاً.
- Art is neither boring nor difficult. الفن ليس مملاً ولا صعباً.
- Art is full of color, feeling, and imagination. الفن مليء بالألوان والشعور والخيال.
- The famous artwork in the museum is known as a masterpiece. يُعرف العمل الفني المشهور في المتحف بالتحفة الفنية.
- The artist wanted to carve the wood into a figure. أراد الفنان أن ينحت الخشب على شكل شخصية.



استمع إلى النص:

Tape Script

Every frame tells a story. Inside a **frame**⁽¹⁾, there can be either a **painting**⁽²⁾ or a **photograph**⁽³⁾ that shows something **special**⁽⁴⁾. Artists use their paintbrush and palette to mix colors and create beautiful images on a canvas.

كل إطار يحكي قصة. داخل الإطار، يمكن أن توجد إما لوحة فنية أو صورة فوتوغرافية تظهر شيئاً مميزاً. يستخدم الفنانون فرشاة الرسم و لوحة الألوان الخاصة بهم ل مزج الألوان وإنشاء صور جميلة على قماش الرسم.

Some artists prefer sculpture, while others enjoy painting, but both types of art show **talent**⁽⁵⁾ and **creativity**⁽⁶⁾. Great artists can carve wood or stone to make strong shapes that **seem alive**⁽⁷⁾.

يفضل بعض الفنانين النحت، بينما يستمتع آخرون بالرسم، لكن كلا النوعين من الفن يُظهران موهبة وإبداعاً. يمكن للفنانين العظماء أن ينحتوا الخشب أو الحجر ليصنعوا أشكالاً قوية تبدو حية!

Not every **artwork**⁽⁸⁾ is **famous**⁽⁹⁾, but some become masterpieces that people remember forever. Inside a gallery, you can find both modern and old pieces of art. Sometimes, visitors stand quietly and whisper to each other about what they see.



ليس كل عمل فني يكون مشهوراً، ولكن بعضها يُصبح تحفاً فنية يتذكرها الناس إلى الأبد. داخل المعرض، يمكنك أن تجد كلا من قطع فنية حديثة وقديمة.

أحياناً، يقف الزوار بهدوء ويهمسون لبعضهم البعض حول ما يرونه.

Art is everywhere; it's neither boring nor difficult. It's full of color, feeling, and **imagination**⁽¹⁰⁾.

الفن موجود في كل مكان؛ فهو ليس مملاً ولا صعباً. إنه مليء بالألوان والشعور والخيال!

Arabic Meaning

- ١- إطار
- ٢- لوحة فنية
- ٣- صورة فوتوغرافية
- ٤- مميز
- ٥- موهبة
- ٦- إبداع
- ٧- تبدو حية
- ٨- عمل فني
- ٩- مشهور
- ١٠- خيال

Language in Use

قواعد لغوية

Conjunction Pairs حروف العطف المترابطة

1 either ... or إمّا... أو

⊙ We can use **either...or** to talk about a choice between two things.

⊙ يستخدم (**either ... or**) للحديث عن خيار بين شيئين (أي أن الشخص يمكنه اختيار أحد الأمرين وليس كليهما معاً في نفس الوقت وتأتي كالتالي:

(الاختيار الثاني) **or** (الاختيار الأول) **either**

- Inside a frame, there can be either a painting or a photograph.
- You can have either tea or coffee.
- We can visit either the museum or the gallery.
- Mariam will buy either a paintbrush or a new palette.

2 neither ... nor لا هذا ولا ذاك

⊙ We use **neither...nor** to say that two things are not true.

⊙ نستخدم (**neither ... nor**) لنقول أن شيئين غير صحيحين (أي أننا ننتفي خيارين أو شيئين معاً) وتأتي كالاتي:

neither (الاختيار الثاني) **nor** (الاختيار الأول)

- Art is neither boring nor difficult.
- I like neither coffee nor tea.
- The movie was neither interesting nor fun.
- He wants neither to go home nor to stay here.

3 both ... and كلا من ... و

⊙ We use **both...and** to say that two things are true at the same time.

⊙ نستخدم (**both....and**) لنقول أن شيئين صحيحان في نفس الوقت (أي أننا نؤكد على جمع شيئين أو فكرتين معاً) وتأتي كالاتي:

both (الشئ الأول) **and** (الشئ الثاني)

- I like both coffee and tea.
- The movie was both interesting and exciting.
- Both painting and sculpture show talent and creativity.
- Both Ali and Sara are doctors.

Checkup Exercise (✓)

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. The artwork was (either) interesting nor colorful.
2. Both painting (or) sculpture show talent and imagination.
3. The gallery shows (neither) old artworks and modern masterpieces.

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We can find a inside a frame. SB
 - a song
 - b photograph or painting
 - c sculpture
 - d poem
2. Artists use to mix colors. SB
 - a canvas and hammer
 - b wood and caly
 - c stone and knife
 - d paintbrush and palette
3. The artist wanted to the wood into a figure. SB
 - a mix
 - b shape
 - c tell
 - d prefer
4. Painters often mix colors on a before painting. SB
 - a canvas
 - b sculpture
 - c palette
 - d hammer
5. Nelly has a great for drawing.
 - a hammer
 - b image
 - c shape
 - d talent
6. Art needs a lot of and imagination.
 - a creativity
 - b visitor
 - c pottery
 - d project
7. We enjoyed looking at the modern in the museum.
 - a poem
 - b skill
 - c artwork
 - d tool
8. The artist's painting of the dog made its eyes seem
 - a life
 - b lives
 - c alive
 - d live
9. A good artist needs a strong to create new images.
 - a frame
 - b imagination
 - c hammer
 - d figure
10. You can find a painting or a photograph. SB
 - a neither
 - b either
 - c both
 - d so
11. Art is boring nor difficult; it is exciting and creative. SB
 - a either
 - b both
 - c neither
 - d so
12. You can use a paintbrush and a palette to create your artwork. SB
 - a both
 - b either
 - c neither
 - d so
13. The visitor found both the figure the mural very exciting.
 - a nor
 - b or
 - c and
 - d or

Unit 1 Celebrating Creativity

14. We will use blue or green instead of red for this image.
a either **b** both **c** neither **d** so
15. Sarah is good at both math science.
a or **b** nor **c** and **d** so
16. We can travel by train or by bus.
a either **b** neither **c** both **d** and
17. He likes sweet food nor spicy food.
a either **b** neither **c** both **d** so
18. I can bring my camera my phone to take pictures.
a either ... nor **b** neither ... or
c both ... or **d** both ... and
19. He got 15 out of 20, so he was neither happy sad.
a and **b** so **c** nor **d** or

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

sculptures - palette - carve - paintings - paintbrush

Mrs Fatma went to an art gallery yesterday. She saw nice ① with bright colors. Artists use their ② and ③ to mix colors and create beautiful images on canvas. Some artists prefer ④ They can carve wood or stone to shape them.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word (words) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. You can choose (**neither**) a sculpture or a painting for your art project. SB
2. The new art gallery is (**both**) small nor crowded, it is just perfect! SB
3. Both artists who carve wood (**or**) those who paint need creativity. SB
4. On the shelf, you will see (**either**) a science book and a history book. SB
5. The gallery was (**neither**) exciting and crowded.
6. You can visit either the museum (**nor**) the studio today.
7. I found neither the key (**and**) the wallet in the bag.
8. Maged bought (**either**) the frame nor the canvas.
9. The new artwork is both modern (**or**) beautiful.

10. For the sculpture, the artist will use (both) wood or clay.

11. My friend has (both) talent nor imagination for art.

4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

رتب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة :

1. tells - story - frame - a - Every.

2. can - stone - wood - Great - carve - artists - or.

3. neither - boring - is - difficult - Art - nor.

4. use - palette - mix - a paintbrush - Artists - colors - and - to.

5. sculpture - creativity - painting - Both - show - and.

5 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٦٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

Your dream studio

special – artwork

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المضردات:



talented

موهوب

art exhibition



incredible

لا يصدق / مذهل

معرض فني



mural

جدارية

Egyptian



sketch

رسم تخطيطي

مصري



Other words

كلمات أخرى

truly

حقاً

woman

امراة

Sphinx

أبو الهول

absolutely

تماماً / قطعاً

definitely

بالتأكيد / حتماً

university student

طالب جامعي

tiny

صغير جداً

interesting

شيق

impressive

مثير للإعجاب / مؤثر

amazing

مذهل / رائع



Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعابير وأحرف جر وعبارات

make a statue/ a sculpture

يصنع تمثالاً / منحوتة

at the exhibition

في المعرض

at university

في الجامعة

work on artworks

يعمل على أعمال فنية



Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

imagine

يتخيل

work

يعمل

impress يثير الإعجاب/ يبهز

paint

يرسم / يدهن

Past ماضٍ & P.P.

imagined

worked

impressed

painted

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

begin

يبدأ

make

يصنع

see

يري

Past ماضٍ

began

made

saw

P.P. التصريف الثالث

begun

made

seen

Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

يفضل شئ على شئ آخر + to + شئ + prefer

- Ali preferred Mahmoud Mokhtar's paintings to his sculptures.

Study the following

1 Karim and Ali visited an amazing art exhibition last month.

زار كريم وعلي معرضاً فنياً مذهلاً الشهر الماضي.

2 The exhibition was about a truly talented Egyptian artist.

كان المعرض يدور حول فنان مصري موهوب حقاً.

3 Mahmoud Mokhtar made a big statue called Nahdit Masr.

صنع محمود مختار تمثالاً كبيراً يُدعى نهضة مصر.

4 The statue shows a woman and a sphinx.

يُظهر التمثال امرأة وأبو الهول

5 The sculpture was absolutely incredible.

كانت المنحوتة مذهلة بشكل لا يصدق

6 I saw his first sketch for the sculpture.

رأيت الرسم التخطيطي الأولي له لهذه المنحوتة.

7 Did you see the beautiful mural he created?

هل رأيت الجدارية الجميلة التي أنشأها؟

8 His pottery room was very interesting.

كانت غرفة الفخار الخاصة به ممتعة للغاية.

9 Mahmoud Mokhtar really was a talented artist.

كان محمود مختار حقاً فناناً موهوباً.

10 Mahmoud Mokhtar could work in both painting and sculpture.

كان محمود مختار يستطيع العمل في كلا من الرسم والنحت.

1 Read the dialog and act it out:

أقرأ الحوار و قم بتمثيله:

Tape Script

استمع إلى النص:



Ali : Karim, remember that amazing art **exhibition**⁽¹⁾ we visited last month? It was about a truly **talented**⁽²⁾ Egyptian artist.

علي: هل تتذكر يا كريم ذلك المعرض الفني المذهل الذي زرناه الشهر الماضي؟ كان عن فنان مصري موهوب حقاً.

Karim : Oh, yes! It was about Mahmoud Mokhtar. He made a big statue called Nahdit Masr. It shows a woman and a sphinx. I cannot **imagine**⁽³⁾ how he began to carve this huge statue.

كريم: أوه، نعم! كان عن محمود مختار. لقد صنع تمثالاً كبيراً يدعى «نهضة مصر». إنه يظهر امرأة وأبو الهول. لا أستطيع أن أتخيل كيف بدأ في نحت هذا التمثال الضخم.

Ali : I know! The sculpture was **absolutely**⁽⁴⁾ **incredible**⁽⁵⁾. I also saw his first sketch for it. But I **definitely**⁽⁶⁾ preferred his paintings. Did you see the beautiful mural he created?

علي: أعلم! كانت المنحوتة مذهلة تماماً. لقد رأيت أيضاً رسمة التخليطي الأولى لها. لكنني بالتأكيد فضلت لوحاته. هل رأيت الجدارية الجميلة التي أنشأها؟

Karim : I did! And I saw the small canvas he painted when he was a university **student**⁽⁷⁾. It was right next to both his old palette and a tiny paintbrush. His **pottery room**⁽⁸⁾ was also very interesting. He really was a talented artist.

كريم: نعم! ورأيت اللوحة القماشية الصغيرة التي رسمها عندما كان طالباً جامعياً. كانت بجوار كل من لوحة الألوان القديمة وفرشاة رسم صغيرة جداً. وغرفة أعماله الخزارية كانت مثيرة للاهتمام أيضاً. لقد كان حقاً فناناً موهوباً.



Arabic Meaning

- ١- معرض
- ٢- موهوب
- ٣- يتخيل
- ٤- تماماً/ قطعاً
- ٥- مذهل
- ٦- بالتأكيد/ حتماً
- ٧- طالب جامع
- ٨- غرفة أعمال فخارية

Pronunciation

1- What is a syllable? ما هو المقطع الصوتي؟

⊙ A word or part of a word which contains a single vowel sound.

⊙ هو كلمة، أو جزء من كلمة، يحتوي على صوت متحرك واحد (Single Vowel Sound)

الاصوات المتحركة هي: (a/e/i/o/u) ويعد أيضاً حرف **y** من المقاطع الصوتية

Word	المقاطع Syllables	Word	المقاطع Syllables
ease	1	cat	1
easy	2	tiger	2
easily	3	elephant	3

What is word stress?

- ⊙ بعد أن تعلمنا أن الكلمات الإنجليزية تُقسم إلى مقاطع صوتية، نتعلم أن في كل كلمة مقطع يكون مشدد في الكلمة (أي أن صوت هذا المقطع يكون أكثر صوت بارز في الكلمة).
- وتختلف الشدة (°) في اللغة العربية حيث تكون على حرف في الكلمة أما في اللغة الانجليزية تكون على مقطع من المقاطع ويجب معرفة المقطع المشدد في اللغة الانجليزية لأن ذلك ممكن يغير المعنى فمثلاً كلمة (pre-sent) تعني هدية وذلك إذا كان التشديد على المقطع الأول. أما إذا كان التشديد على المقطع الثاني (pre-sent) يكون معناها يُقدم.
- ⊙ لمعرفة المقطع المشدد في اللغة الانجليزية نقسم الكلمة إلى مقاطع صوتية ثم نسمع الكلمة ونحدد المقطع أو نبحث عن الكلمة في قاموس وسنري علامة (°) فوق المقطع المشدد فمثلاً في كلمة (dentist) تقسم إلى (den-tist) نلاحظ أن التشديد على المقطع الأول. (dentist)

⊙ يمكن للـ (word stress) أن يغير معنى الكلمة ونوعها (اسم أو فعل)، كالتالي:

PREsent (noun) → a gift

هدية

preSENT (verb) → to give or show something

يقدم أو يعرض شيئاً ما

REcord (noun) → a CD or collection of music

سجل أو ألبوم

reCORD (verb) → to make a sound or video recording

يسجل صوتاً أو فيديو

⊙ There are some simple rules for word stress: هناك بعض القواعد البسيطة للمقطع المشدد

Two-Syllable Words الكلمات ذو المقطعين	Three-Syllable Words الكلمات ذو ال 3 مقاطع
⊙ Nouns and adjectives: الاسماء و الصفات - stress the first syllable - يكون التشديد على المقطع الاول Ex. Table – PICTure – HAPpy	⊙ If the word ends with -er or -ly, stress the first syllable. - إذا انتهت الكلمة ب (-er) أو (-ly)، يكون التشديد على المقطع الأول Ex. MANager - CLEverly - HAPpily - SILently
⊙ Verbs: الأفعال stress the second syllable - يكون التشديد على المقطع الثاني Ex. beGIN – deCIDE – reLAX	⊙ If the word ends with a consonant or -y, stress the first syllable. - إذا انتهت الكلمة بحرف ساكن أو (-y)، يكون التشديد على المقطع الأول Ex. ANimal – FAMily – CHEmistry

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Mahmoud Mokhtar was a very Egyptian artist who could work in both painting and sculpture. SB

- a talent b talented c skill d painted

2. The "Nahdit Masr" statue is his most masterpiece that impressed many visitors. SB

- a unknown b talented c useless d incredible

3. I went to an interesting about Egyptian history.

- a palette b feeling c exhibition d brush

4. I was absolutely by his talent and creativity.

- a worked b imagined c impressed d printed

5. The painter made a quick of the figure before starting the painting.

- a palette b sketch c mural d photograph

6. The student's final project for the university was and won a prize.

- a tall b terrible c boring d incredible

7. The statue of "Nahdit Masr" shows a and a sphinx.

- a student b visitor c painter d woman

8. Mahmoud Mokhtar could work in both painting and

- a photograph b sculpture c imagination d feeling

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

absolutely - impress - exhibition - sketch - mural

A talented woman created an amazing ❶ for the city wall. She began with a ❷ The idea was ❸ incredible! She wants her work to ❹ every visitor.

3 Read the text and answer the following questions:

أقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

My name is Salma. I found an old photograph in a frame. The image was truly beautiful. It showed my grandmother as a young woman. She was standing next to the Sphinx in Giza. The photograph is not boring; it tells a story. I imagined her life. She was absolutely happy in that moment. I will remember this forever. It is a special piece of art for my family. This interesting picture is more impressive than any modern painting in a museum.

A. Choose the correct answer:

1. Salma found a/an in a frame.

- ☐ a modern painting ☐ b old photograph ☐ c clay figure ☐ d university sketch

2. The photograph is

- ☐ a boring ☐ b modern ☐ c interesting ☐ d bad

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Who is the young woman in the photograph?

.....

4. What is the main idea of the text?

.....

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. the - sculpture - I - sketch - saw - first - for - the

.....

2. talented - a - was - Mahmoud Mokhtar - artist.

.....

3. a woman - a sphinx - The - shows - and - statue

.....

4. you - mural - the - Did - see - beautiful?

.....

Unit 1 Celebrating Creativity

5. last - visited - art exhibition - Noha - an - month.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. my dad drives me to school

2. who was the artist

6 Write an email of SIXTY (60) words to your friend to tell him about your visit to an art exhibition using the following guiding elements:

اكتب بريد إلكتروني من (٦٠) كلمة عن:

Your name is Rayan and your email address is rayan@gmail.com Your friend name is Omar and his email address is omar@gmail.com.

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

sculptures - artwork

 **New Message**

To

:

Cc

Bcc

From

:

Subject

:

Send

















Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المضردات:



The Grand
Egyptian Museum

المتحف المصري الكبير



treasures

كنوز



golden mask

قناع ذهبي



temple

معبد



hall

قاعة



artifacts

مقتنيات / قطع أثرية



Other words

كلمات أخرى

wide

واسع

base

قاعدة

narrow

ضيق

top

قمة / أعلى

carefully

بعناية / بحرص

design

تصميم

imaginary

خيالي / وهمي

pointy

مدبب

rough

خشن

texture

قوام

tiny

صغير جدًا

medium

متوسط

huge

ضخم

shade

ظل / تظليل

smooth

ناعم / أملس

shiny

لامع / براق

patterns

نقوش / أنماط

toothpick

عود أسنان (خلة أسنان)

real

حقيقي

pale

شاحب / باهت

curved

مُنحني / مُقَوَّس

stuff

أشياء / مواد

awesome

رائع

soft

لين / ناعم

hard

صلب

history

تاريخ

Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعابير وحروف جر وعبارات

by hand
proud of
work hard

باليدين / يدوياً
فخور بـ
يعمل بجد

learn about
join workshops
take photos

يتعلم عن
ينضم إلى ورش عمل
يلتقط صوراً

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	
polish	يلمع
dry	يجف

Past ماضٍ & P.P.	
polished	
dried	

Present مضارع	
feel	يشعر / يبدو
build	يبنى

Past ماضٍ	
felt	
built	

P.P. التصريف الثالث	
felt	
built	

Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

feel + adj. صفة

يبدو

- The surface feels smooth and shiny.

Study the following

1 I made a colorful clay vase.

صنعت زهرية ملونة من الصلصال.

2 I mix some of the colors to create new shades.

أمزج بعض الألوان لإنشاء درجات جديدة من التظليل.

3 I'm proud of my vase.

أنا فخور بزهرتي.

4 I worked hard on the design and took my time to make it special.

عملت بجد على التصميم وأخذت وقتي لجعلها مميزة.

5 It's one of my favorite art projects!

إنها واحدة من مشاريعي الفنية المفضلة!

6 People visit the museum to see ancient treasures.

يزور الناس المتحف لرؤية الكنوز القديمة.

7 They learn about the history of Egypt.

يتعلمون عن تاريخ مصر.

8 The museum has many beautiful halls and galleries.

يحتوي المتحف على العديد من القاعات والمعارض الجميلة.

9 Visitors can see the golden mask of King Tutankhamun.

يمكن للزوار رؤية القناع الذهبي للملك توت عنخ آمون.

10 Students and tourists watch videos and join workshops.

يشاهد الطلاب والسياح مقاطع الفيديو وينضمون إلى الورش التدريبية.

Read the paragraph and underline the descriptive words:

اقرأ الفقرة وضع خطاً تحت الكلمات الوصفية:

استمع إلى النص:



Tape Script

I made a colorful clay vase. It is tall, with a **wide**⁽¹⁾, round **base**⁽²⁾ and a **narrow**⁽³⁾ top. I used red, blue, and yellow clay to shape it carefully by hand, mixing some of the colors to create new **shades**⁽⁴⁾. The surface feels **smooth**⁽⁵⁾ and **shiny**⁽⁶⁾ because I **polished**⁽⁷⁾ it after it **dried**⁽⁸⁾. There are small **patterns**⁽⁹⁾ around the middle, which I made using a **toothpick**⁽¹⁰⁾. I'm proud of my vase because I worked hard on the **design**⁽¹¹⁾ and took my time to make it **special**⁽¹²⁾. It's one of my favorite art projects!

Arabic Meaning

- ١- واسع
- ٢- قاعدة
- ٣- ضيق
- ٤- درجات اللون
- ٥- ناعم
- ٦- لامع
- ٧- لمعته
- ٨- جف
- ٩- نقوش
- ١٠- عود أسنان
- ١١- تصميم
- ١٢- مميز



لقد صنعتُ زهرية من الطين ملونة. إنها طويلة، ذات قاعدة واسعة ومستديرة وقمة ضيقة. استخدمتُ طين أحمر وأزرق وأصفر لتشكيلها بعناية باليد، وخلطتُ بعض الألوان لإنشاء درجات ألوان جديدة من التظليل. السطح يبدو ناعماً ولامعاً لأنني لمعته بعد أن جف. توجد نقوش صغيرة حول المنتصف، صنعتها باستخدام عود أسنان. أنا فخور بزهريتي لأنني عملت بجد على التصميم واستغرقت وقتاً لأجعلها مميزة. إنه أحد مشاريعي الفنية المفضلة!

Look and read the poster about the Grand Egyptian Museum:

انظر واقرأ الملصق (أو الإعلان) حول المتحف المصري الكبير:

The Grand Egyptian Museum



People visit the museum to see ancient treasures and statues. They learn about the history of Egypt.

يُزور الناس المتحف لرؤية الكنوز والتماثيل. إنهم يتعلمون عن تاريخ مصر.

The museum has many beautiful halls and galleries. Visitors can see the golden mask of King Tutankhamun and other famous artifacts.

يضم المتحف العديد من القاعات والمعارض الجميلة. يمكن للزوار رؤية قناع الملك توت عنخ آمون الذهبي وقطع أثرية مشهورة أخرى.



Students and tourists watch videos and join workshops. They learn how the ancient Egyptians built temples.

يشاهد الطلاب والسياح مقاطع فيديو وينضمون إلى ورش عمل. إنهم يتعلمون كيف بنى المصريون القدماء المعابد.

After the visit, families enjoy food in the museum's garden café. They talk about what they saw and take photos.

بعد الزيارة، تستمتع العائلات بالطعام في مقهى حديقة المتحف. يتحدثون عما شاهدوه ويلتقطون الصور.

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- The Grand Egyptian Museum displays amazing
 a toothpick b shades c treasures d designs
- The most famous is the golden mask.
 a hall b base c top d artifact
- The sculpture has a pointy shape and a texture.
 a shiny b pale c rough d curved
- The new had a wide base and a narrow top.
 a history b design c stuff d hall
- We learn how the ancient Egyptians temples.
 a built b dried c felt d polished
- They built this museum to keep our safe.
 a history b patterns c toothpick d shades
- Rana hard on the design and carefully polished the wood.
 a felt b built c worked d dried
- We are proud Egypt's long history.
 a in b to c at d of

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

favorite - artifacts - awesome - boring - treasure

I went to the Grand Egyptian Museum with my family. It was ① We saw so many famous ② My ③ artifact was the golden mask. It's a real ④ from ancient history.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. a colorful - vase - made - I - clay

2. see - golden - King Tutankhamun - Visitors - the - can - mask - of

3. galleries - has - beautiful - The museum - halls - and

4. one - favorite - art - It's - of - my - projects

5. hard - design - worked - Ali - the - on

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. it makes your writing clear

2. what did they see

5 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٦٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

An artwork you made

1. What did you make? 2. What stuff did you use?

Review



on Unit 1



whisper

يهمس



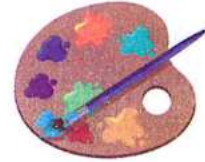
canvas

لوحة قماش / قماش الرسم



paintbrush

فرشاة الرسم



palette

لوحة الألوان



carve

ينحت



sculpture

نحت / منحوتة / تمثال



masterpiece

تحفة فنية



art gallery

معرض فني



talented

موهوب



incredible

لا يصدق / مذهل



mural

جدارية



sketch

رسم تخطيطي



The Grand Egyptian Museum

المتحف المصري الكبير



treasures

كنوز



golden mask

قناع ذهبي



temple

معبد



hall

قاعة



artifacts

مقتنيات / قطع أثرية

Unit 1 Celebrating Creativity

artist	فنان	history	تاريخ
pottery	خزف / فخار	inspired	مُلهم
statue	تمثال	artwork	عمل فني / تحفة فنية
frame	إطار	famous	مشهور
talent	موهبة	photograph	صورة فوتوغرافية
creativity	إبداع	Egyptian	مصري
art exhibition	معرض فني		

Language in Use

قواعد لغوية

Conjunction Pairs حروف العطف المترابطة

1 either ... or إما ... أو

⊙ We can use either...or to talk about a choice between two things.

⊙ نستخدم (either ... or) للحديث عن خيار بين شيئين (أي أن الشخص يمكنه اختيار أحد الأمرين وليس كليهما معاً في نفس الوقت وتأتي كالاتي؛

(الاختيار الثاني) or (الاختيار الأول) either

- Inside a frame, there can be either a painting or a photograph.
- You can have either tea or coffee.
- We can visit either the museum or the gallery.
- Mariam will buy either a paintbrush or a new palette.

2 neither ... nor لا هذا ولا ذلك

⊙ We use neither...nor to say that two things are not true.

⊙ نستخدم (neither ... nor) لنقول أن شيئين غير صحيحين (أي أننا ننفي خيارين أو شيئين معاً) وتأتي كالاتي؛

(الاختيار الثاني) nor (الاختيار الأول) neither

- Art is neither boring nor difficult.
- I like neither coffee nor tea.
- The movie was neither interesting nor fun.
- He wants neither to go home nor to stay here.

2 both ... and كلا من ... و

⊙ We use both...and to say that two things are true at the same time.

⊙ نستخدم (both...and) لنقول أن شيئين صحيحان في نفس الوقت (أي أننا نؤكد على جمع شيئين أو فكرتين معاً) وتأتي كالاتي؛

(الشئ الثاني) and (الشئ الأول) both

- I like both coffee and tea.
- The movie was both interesting and exciting.
- Both painting and sculpture show talent and creativity.
- Both Ali and Sara are doctors.



Answers to Paragraphs

1

Lesson 1

Your visit to the art gallery

I visited the art gallery with my friends last month. I saw many beautiful paintings and a big wooden statue. The artist used tools to carve the stone. I saw huge paintings on a canvas. We walked into a room with beautiful pottery and a wooden statue. I felt very happy and excited. I liked the bright colors. I wish I could make art like that one day.

2

Lesson 2

Your Dream Studio

My dream studio will be a special place, full of creativity. As a painter, I'll practice every day to improve my talent and create beautiful artwork. I prefer modern art. I also can carve wood or stone to make strong shapes that seem alive. My paintings are full of color, feeling, and imagination. I will use clay to make shapes and figures. I hope to become famous and people remember my images forever!

3

Lesson 3

A visit to an art exhibition

To: omar@gmail.com

From: rayan@gmail.com

Subject: A visit to an art exhibition

Hi Omar,

How is it going? Yesterday, I visited an amazing art exhibition. I saw beautiful paintings and impressive sculptures. The artwork was truly creative and inspiring. I saw a big statue called Nahdit Masr. It shows a woman and a sphinx. It was absolutely incredible. I also saw a canvas. It was bright and colorful. I wish you were there with me! We should visit it together next time.

Yours,

Your friend,

Rayan

4

Lesson 4&5

An artwork you made

I made a beautiful bowl from clay. I used my hands to shape it and a toothpick to draw pointy patterns on the surface. The bowl has a wide base and curved sides. It feels very smooth after I polished it. There are small patterns around the middle. I felt very proud of my bowl because I worked hard to make it look awesome. It's one of my favorite art projects.

5

Test Al-Azhar

Art

Art is a beautiful way to show creativity and feeling. It can be a painting, a sculpture, or even a photograph in a frame. Art is neither boring nor difficult; it is full of colors and imagination. Good art helps us learn about history and the past. When I look at an awesome piece of art, I feel happy and inspired.

6

Test

The Grand Egyptian Museum

The Grand Egyptian Museum is an incredible place to visit in Egypt. The large hall is full of many ancient artifacts and treasures from the past. Visitors can see the famous golden mask and huge statues. The museum has many beautiful halls and galleries. Visitors can see famous artifacts. Everyone can learn about history and feel deeply excited and inspired.

1 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

palette – favorite – mural – gallery – masterpiece – inspired

Marwan asks Ziad about his visit to the art gallery.

Marwan : Did you like the art gallery?

Ziad : Yes! I saw a huge ① _____ on the wall.

Marwan : Which piece of art was your ② _____?

Ziad : I loved the sculpture—it felt like a ③ _____!

Marwan : Are you feeling ④ _____ now?

Ziad : Yes! I wish I had my paintbrush and ⑤ _____ right away!

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات التي بين الأقواس:

- The masterpiece is _____ (either) famous and full of feeling.
- We can paint the wall _____ (neither) yellow or white.
- My room is neither messy _____ (or) untidy. It's organized.
- _____ (Neither) the figure and the frame are very old.
- The poem was neither long _____ (and) short

SB

3 Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

- The artist spent an afternoon in the studio to _____ a figure from a block of marble.

SB

a impress **b** show **c** carve **d** whisper

- She carefully selected colors from her _____ before starting the painting.

SB

a paintbrush **b** mural **c** palette **d** canvas

- My sister used a beautiful wooden _____ for her finished painting.

a sketch **b** treasure **c** frame **d** shade

- I want to _____ workshops to improve my drawing.

a join **b** become **c** prefer **d** mix

- Shady is a talented painter; he loves to _____ art.

a do **b** make **c** have **d** play

Unit 1 Celebrating Creativity

6. Our teacher is kind and helpful.
a either **b** both **c** neither **d** or
7. You can choose to create a painting or a sculpture for the contest. **SB**
a either **b** neither **c** both **d** so
8. Celin is talented and creative.
a either **b** neither **c** both **d** so
9. The artist used neither a paintbrush a hammer for this project.
a or **b** nor **c** so **d** and
10. The final piece of art was colorful and powerful. Everyone admired it.
a either **b** neither **c** both **d** so

4 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with a correct word:

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة :

1	create	frame	prefer	describe	-----
2	smooth	rough	canvas	curved	-----
3	masterpiece	paint	mural	sculpture	-----
4	creative	beautiful	famous	museum	-----
5	impressive	school	gallery	museum	-----

5 Read the following passage then answer the questions:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة التالية :

My visit to the Grand Egyptian Museum was absolutely amazing. The hall was full of ancient treasures and artifacts. I saw the golden mask of King Tutankhamun. It was incredible! Many visitors were there to learn about the history of Egypt. They could take photos and join workshops. I saw a model of a temple. The guide told us interesting stories about the Sphinx. It was an exciting trip that I will never forget.

A) Write true (T) or false (F) :

	T	F
1. The visitors saw the golden mask of King Tutankhamun.	☐	☐
2. They couldn't take photos.	☐	☐
3. They learn about the sports of Egypt.	☐	☐

B. Choose the correct answer:

4. The hall at the museum is full of

a treasures and artifacts

b photos and workshops

c murals and temples

d modern art

5. The guide told the visitors stories about the

a Pyramids

b Sphinx

c temple

d workshops

6 Write a short paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمسة جمل عن:

مجااب آخر الوحدة

Art

creativity - awesome - sculpture - piece of art - inspired

Test on Unit 1

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. Farida visited the Sphinx and the Pyramids.	☐	☐
2. She wasn't excited.	☐	☐
3. She took photos of the treasures.	☐	☐
4. The trip was boring.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- The girls made a large on the walls of the school.
a poem **b** mural **c** palette **d** toothpick
- The museum has many ancient
a statues **b** bikes **c** brushes **d** ideas
- The artwork was interesting and colorful.
a either **b** neither **c** both **d** but
- You can choose a toy or a book for your birthday present.
a both **b** either **c** so **d** neither

3 Read and complete the sentences with the words in the box

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

museum - famous - statues - paintings - palette

I am a young artist. My wish is to become ① I practice with my paintbrush and ② every day. I create colorful ③ on canvas. I also work with clay to make shapes. My dream is to see my ④ in a museum. I will work hard to make a masterpiece.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Mahmoud Mokhtar is considered the father of modern Egyptian sculpture. He was a truly talented Egyptian artist. He began his journey as a student at the School of Fine Arts in Cairo. Later, he continued his studies in Paris.

Mokhtar created his most famous masterpiece, the statue "Nahdet Misr". This incredible statue shows a strong woman standing next to a huge sphinx. The sculpture is absolutely impressive and is made from strong granite. Mokhtar worked on many artworks, including paintings and interesting pottery. He died young but his creative art stands forever in Egyptian history.

A. Choose the correct answer:

- Mahmoud Mokhtar is known as the father of modern Egyptian
☐ a painting ☐ b pottery ☐ c sculpture ☐ d history
- The statue "Nahdet Misr" is made from strong
☐ a clay ☐ b granite ☐ c metal ☐ d wood

B. Answer the following questions:

- Where did Mokhtar begin his art studies?

- What two figures does the famous statue "Nahdet Misr" show?

- What is the main idea of the text?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- She enjoys both sketching (**nor**) making murals during free time. SB
- We can see (**neither**) the painting or the sculpture. 8

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

- walked - beautiful - into - a room - We - pottery - with

- is known - a masterpiece - artwork - The famous - as

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للأتي:

1. art is neither boring nor difficult

2. what can you see at the art gallery

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٦٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

The Grand Egyptian Museum

treasures - golden mask

Unit 2

Wonderful Inventions

اختراعات رائعة

Learning Outcomes

Speaking

- Describe an invention and explain how it works using clear sentences.
يصف الطالب اختراعاً ويشرح كيف يعمل باستخدام جمل واضحة.
- Discuss problems and brainstorm creative gadget ideas.
يناقش الطالب المشكلات ويبتكر أفكاراً إبداعية لأدوات جديدة.
- Present and describe a model or drawing of an invention clearly to others.
يقدم الطالب وصفاً واضحاً لنموذج أو رسم اختراع للآخرين.

Listening

- Identify the main ideas and specific details in short talks or interviews about inventions and inventors.
يحدد الطالب الأفكار الرئيسية والتفاصيل المحددة في المحادثات القصيرة أو المقابلات حول الاختراعات والمخترعين.
- Follow step-by-step spoken instructions for using or building a gadget.
يتبع الطالب التعليمات المنطوقة خطوة بخطوة لاستخدام أو بناء أداة.
- Identify key vocabulary and phrases related to inventions while listening.
يحدد الطالب المفردات والعبارات الرئيسية المتعلقة بالاختراعات أثناء الاستماع.

Reading

- Identify key vocabulary words related to ancient and modern inventions.
يحدد الطالب الكلمات المفتاحية المتعلقة بالاختراعات القديمة والحديثة.
- Identify the main ideas and the sequence of events in a text.
يحدد الطالب الأفكار الرئيسية وتسلسل الأحداث في النص.
- Recognize and understand the meaning of prefixes (re-, un-) in context.
يتعرف الطالب على معنى البادئات (re-, un-) ويفهمه في سياقه.

Writing

- Write a short paragraph describing an invention idea, explaining its purpose, design, and benefits.
يكتب الطالب فقرة قصيرة تصف فكرة اختراع، مع شرح الغرض منه وتصميمه وفوائده.
- Use key vocabulary and relative pronouns (who, which, that, whose) correctly in writing.
يستخدم الطالب المفردات الرئيسية والضمائر الموصولة (who, which, that, whose) بشكل صحيح في الكتابة.
- Create a simple blueprint or design for a new gadget.
ينشئ الطالب مخططاً بسيطاً أو تصميمياً لأداة جديدة.

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



invention

اختراع



gadgets

أدوات / أجهزة



blueprint

مخطط



tools

أدوات



assemble

يُجمَع



improve

يحسن

brilliant

engineer

solar robot gadget

عبقري

مهندس

جهاز الروبوت الشمسي

machine

solar power

آلة

الطاقة الشمسية



Other words

كلمات أخرى

flying carpet

step

detailed

plan

effective

product

method

useful

interviewer

بساط الريح

خطوة

مفصل

خطة

فعال

منتج

طريقة

مفيد

محاوَر

device

wheels

musical instrument

telescope

wind energy

electricity

completely

model

جهاز

عجلات

آلة موسيقية

تلسكوب

طاقة الرياح

كهرباء

بالكامل

نموذج

Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

follow steps	يتبع الخطوات	explore ideas	يستكشف الأفكار
make a whole	يجهز مجموعة كاملة	get started	يبدأ
for the first time	لأول مرة	take apart	يفكك
run on	يعمل بـ		

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ & P.P.	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ & P.P.
invent يُخْتَرِع	invented	explore يَسْتَكْشِف	explored
follow يَتَّبِع	followed	test يَخْتَبِر	tested
fix يُصْلِح	fixed	ignore يَتَجَاهَل	ignored
design يُصَمِّم	designed	replace يَسْتَبْدِل	replaced
place يَضَع	placed	innovate يبتكر / يَجِدِد	innovated
move يَنْقُل	moved		

Definitions

تعريفات

blueprint	مخطط	detailed plan or drawing for making something
assemble	يُجْمَع	to put parts together to make a whole
improve	يُحَسِّن	to make something better, or more effective
tools	أدوات	things used to fix, build, or create things
invention	اختراع	a new idea, product, or method created for the first time
gadget	جهاز / أداة	a small, useful device or tool

Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 gadgets / tools

⊙ gadgets أجهزة أو تقنيات صغيرة

- غالباً ما تكون إلكترونية، صغيرة الحجم، ومصممة لغرض جديد أو ذكي

أمثلة: الساعة الذكية، جهاز تعقب اللياقة البدنية

- I wanted to create a simple **gadget** that feels like a small machine.

⊙ tools أدوات

- تستخدم في المهام اليدوية والبناء والإصلاح.

أمثلة: المطرقة / المنشار

- First, you assemble the small parts using the right **tools**.

Study the following

1 Today, we have a talented young engineer with an amazing invention.

اليوم، لدينا مهندس شاب موهوب باختراع مذهل.

2 I wanted to create a simple gadget.

أردت أن أبتكر جهازاً بسيطاً.

3 The first step was designing a detailed blueprint.

الخطوة الأولى كانت تصميم مخطط مفصل.

7 Assemble the small parts to build the model.

جَمْع الأجزاء الصغيرة لبناء النموذج.

5 The robot runs on solar power.

يعمل الروبوت بالطاقة الشمسية.

6 The wheels of the robot move when you place it in the sun.

تتحرك عجلات الروبوت عندما تضعه في الشمس.

7 This invention is a fun way to explore new ideas.

هذا الاختراع طريقة ممتعة لاستكشاف أفكار جديدة.

Tape Script



استمع إلى النص:

**A clear, friendly voice, as if hosting a show**

(صوت واضح وودود، وكأنه يقدم برنامجاً)

Interviewer : Welcome back! Today, we have a talented young engineer here with an amazing invention - the solar robot gadget. Can you tell us more about this gadget?

المُحاور: أهلاً بكم من جديد! اليوم، لدينا مهندس شاب موهوب هنا باختراع مذهل - جهاز الروبوت الشمسي. هل يمكنك أن تخبرنا المزيد عن هذا الجهاز؟

Young Engineer: Thank you! I wanted to create a simple gadget that feels like a small machine. The first step was designing a detailed blueprint.

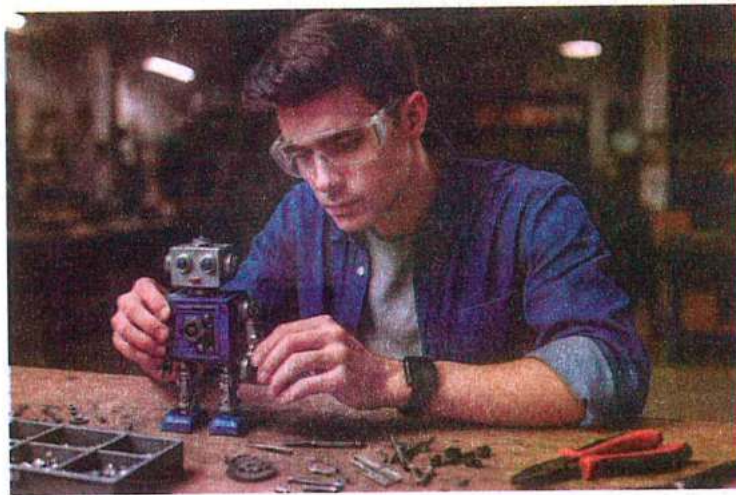
المهندس الشاب: شكراً لك! أردت أن أصنع جهازاً بسيطاً يبدو وكأنه آلة صغيرة. كانت الخطوة الأولى هي تصميم مخطط مفصل.

Interviewer : Wow! How do we use it?

المُحاور: رائع! كيف نستخدمه؟

Young Engineer: First, you assemble the small parts using the right tools. The robot runs on solar power, so the wheels move when you place it in the sun. If something isn't working, you can easily improve it. This invention is a fun way to explore new ideas every day. Let's get started!

المهندس الشاب: أولاً، تقوم بتجميع الأجزاء الصغيرة باستخدام الأدوات الصحيحة. يعمل الروبوت بالطاقة الشمسية، لذا تتحرك العجلات عندما تضعه في الشمس. إذا لم يعمل شيء ما، يمكنك تحسينه بسهولة. هذا الاختراع طريقة ممتعة لاستكشاف أفكار جديدة كل يوم. دعنا نبدأ!



Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We use to fix and assemble machines. SB
 a tools b carpets c prizes d blueprints
2. I want to a new kind of robot that cleans my room. SB
 a follow b fix c invent d ignore
3. My dad had to the pieces of our new chair. SB
 a explore b assemble c follow d innovate
4. This new helps me to find things faster. SB
 a blueprint b workshop c wheel d gadget
5. You can your writing by correcting your mistakes. SB
 a follow b design c improve d innovate
6. A/ An is a new idea, product, or method created for the first time.
 a blueprint b invention c gadget d tool
7. is energy that comes from the sun.
 a Battery energy b Wind energy c Water power d Solar power
8. That medicine was; I feel much better now.
 a effective b delicious c colorful d useless
9. This watch run a small battery.
 a on b in c at d with

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

useful - device - design - steps - assemble

This machine is my new invention. To build it, you must follow the ① in the plan. First, ② all the small parts and wheels. This effective ③ is a fun toy. It is completely ④ for learning.

3 Read the text and answer the following questions:

أقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

Omar always loved to take old machines apart. He wanted to learn how to make a whole new gadget from the pieces. He decided to get started on a new project: a solar-powered fan. He knew he had to follow steps carefully. He designed a plan and began to assemble his model. It did not work the first time. But Omar is a brilliant problem-solver. He worked to improve his design. Finally, he tested his invention. It worked! The small fan moved using only solar power. He was very proud of himself. Omar proved that with a good plan, anyone can create a useful invention.

A. Choose the correct answer:

- The fan finally worked using
☐ a electricity ☐ b wind energy ☐ c solar power ☐ d a small battery
- The model did not work the first time, but Omar decided to the design.
☐ a replace ☐ b ignore ☐ c take apart ☐ d improve

B. Answer the following questions:

- What new gadget did Omar decide to make?

- What does the underlined pronoun "It" refer to?

- How did Omar feel at the end?

4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

- create - wanted - gadget - to - a simple - **Marwa**

- we - a talented - **Today** - have - engineer - young

Unit 2 Wonderful Inventions

3. blueprint - The first - designing - step - was - a detailed

4. tell - about - us - Can - device - you - this -?

5. on - solar - robot - power - runs - The

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يأتي:

1. what steps did you follow

2. My friend, murad, is a talented engineer

6 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٦٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

A gadget or machine you want to create

useful - design

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



fabric

قماش



threads

خيوط



linen

كتان



wooden

خشبي



loom

النول / آلة نسيج

النول هو آلة تستخدم لنسج الخيوط معاً لصناعة القماش.



Other words

كلمات أخرى

clothes

ملابس

the ancient Egyptians

المصريون القدماء

blanket

بطانية

skilled worker

عامل ماهر

process

عملية

possible

ممكن

cloth

قماش

Once

بمجرد / حينما

creation

إبداع / صنع

carefulness

عناية / دقة

fine

جيد

skill

مهارة



Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعابير وحروف جر وعبارات

Thousands of years ago

منذ آلاف السنين

wear / make clothes

يرتدي / يصنع ملابس

build a loom

ينشئ آلة نسيج

be ready

يكون جاهزاً

craft tools

يصنع الأدوات

stand strong

يقف قوياً

build/produce fabric (قماشاً)

ينشئ / ينتج نسيجاً (قماشاً)

move threads

يحرك خيوطاً

throw away

يرمي بعيداً / يتخلص من

different from

مختلف عن

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ & P.P.	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	P.P. التصريف الثالث
train يُدرب	trained	wear يرتدي	wore	worn
craft يصنع	crafted	draw يرسم	drew	drawn
produce يُنتج	produced	sell يبيع	sold	sold
inspire يُلهِم	inspired	meet يقابل	met	met
require يتطلب	required	weave ينسج	wove	woven
consider يعتبر	considered	wove يني	built	built

Definitions

تعريفات

assemble يجمع	put together
blueprint مخطط	detailed plan
fabric قماش	cloth
invention اختراع	creation
carefully بعناية / بحرص	carefulness

Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 wood / wooden (adj)

⊙ **wood (n)** خشب

- We need to buy some **wood** to build a loom.

- المادة الخام نفسها.

⊙ **wooden (adj)** خشبي

- The loom has a **wooden** frame.

- تستخدم لوصف شيء مصنوع من الخشب.

2 cloth / clothes

⊙ **cloth** قماش

- The worker produced a fine **cloth**.

- المادة الخام المنسوجة نفسها مثل قطعة قماش كبيرة أو لفة من النسيج.

⊙ **clothes** ملابس

- Retal wears her new **clothes**.

- المنتجات النهائية المصنوعة من القماش مثل القمصان والفساتين.

Study the following

1 The ancient Egyptians created an amazing invention called the loom.

ابتكر المصريون القدماء اختراعاً مذهلاً يسمى النول.

2 The loom helped people make clothes, blankets, and beautiful fabrics from linen.

ساعد النول الناس في صنع الملابس والبطانيات والأقمشة الجميلة من الكتان.

3 Engineers drew a blueprint before assembling the loom.

رسم المهندسون مخططاً تفصيلياً قبل تجميع النول.

4 The engineer who built the loom was very clever.

كان المهندس الذي بنى النول ماهراً جداً.

5 The workers carefully assembled the wooden pieces of the loom.

جمع العمال بعناية القطع الخشبية للنول.

6 The loom, which needed to stand strong, could work well.

كان النول، الذي احتاج إلى أن يكون قوياً وثابتاً، يستطيع العمل بكفاءة.

7 The process of using the loom required a lot of skills.

تطلبت عملية استخدام النول الكثير من المهارات.

8 People used the loom to build fabric by moving threads up and down.

استخدم الناس النول لنسج القماش عن طريق تحريك الخيوط لأعلى ولأسفل.

9 The loom inspires modern machines that make our clothes.

يلهم النول الآلات الحديثة التي تصنع ملابسنا.

اقرأ النص عن النول المصري: Read the text about the Egyptian loom (SB page 28):

Tape Script

استمع إلى النص:



Thousands of years ago, the ancient Egyptians created an amazing invention called the **loom**,⁽¹⁾ which helped them make clothes, **blankets**,⁽²⁾ and beautiful **fabrics**⁽³⁾ from **linen**.⁽⁴⁾ Before building a loom, an engineer or **skilled worker**,⁽⁵⁾ who was **trained**⁽⁶⁾ in **crafting tools**,⁽⁷⁾ would draw a blueprint to show the size, shape, and parts needed. Then, the workers would assemble the wooden pieces carefully so the loom, which needed to stand strong, could work well.

منذ آلاف السنين، ابتكر المصريون القدماء اختراعاً مذهلاً يُدعى النول، الذي ساعدهم في صنع الملابس البطاطين والأقمشة الجميلة من الكتان. قبل إنشاء النول، كان مهندس أو عامل ماهر، مدرب على صناعة الأدوات، يرسم مخططاً تفصيلياً يُظهر الحجم والشكل والأجزاء المطلوبة. بعد ذلك، كان العمال يجمعون القطع الخشبية بعناية حتى يتمكن النول، الذي كان بحاجة إلى أن يكون قوياً وثابتاً، من العمل بكفاءة.

Once it was ready, people used the loom to build fabric by moving **threads**⁽⁸⁾ up and down, a **process**⁽⁹⁾ that needed a lot of skills. The Egyptian loom made it possible to **produce**⁽¹⁰⁾ fine, colorful cloth which showed the **creativity**⁽¹¹⁾ of ancient Egypt. Today, this ancient invention still **inspires**⁽¹²⁾ modern machines that make our clothes.

بمجرد أن أصبح جاهزاً، استخدم الناس النول لنسج القماش عن طريق تحريك الخيوط لأعلى ولأسفل، وهي عملية تطلبت الكثير من المهارات. أتاح النول المصري إمكانية إنتاج قماش ناعم وملون أظهر إبداع مصر القديمة. واليوم، لا يزال هذا الاختراع القديم يلهم الآلات الحديثة التي تصنع ملابسنا.

Arabic Meaning

- ١- النول / آلة نسج
- ٢- بطاطين
- ٣- أقمشة
- ٤- كتان
- ٥- عامل ماهر
- ٦- تدريب
- ٧- صنع الأدوات
- ٨- خيوط
- ٩- عملية
- ١٠- ينتج
- ١١- إبداع
- ١٢- يلهم



Language in Use

Relative Pronouns

ضمائر الوصل

⊙ ضمائر الوصل هي كلمات تربط جملتين معاً.

1 who: (الذي / التي للعاقل)

- تستخدم (who) لتحل محل العاقل (مفرد وجمع):

⊙ is used for people - the person doing an action.

- تُستخدم للأشخاص - الشخص الذي يقوم بالفعل

- The engineer **who** designed the robot is smart.
 (شخص (اسم عاقل)

- We met the scientist **who** invented the solar-powered fan.

- The chef **who** cooked this meal is famous.

2 whose: (الذي أو التي تملك)

- تستخدم (whose) لتدل على الملكية ويأتي قبلها المالك وبعدها الشيء المملوك:

⊙ is used to show possession.

- The student **whose** invention won was happy.
 (الشيء المملوك) (المالك)

- I helped the old woman **whose** bag was very heavy.

- They live in a house **whose** windows are always open.

3 which: (الذي / التي لغير العاقل)

- تستخدم (which) لتحل محل غير العاقل (مفرد وجمع) يأتي قبلها شيء أو حيوان:

⊙ is used for things and animals.

- The solar robot **which** has wheels is a cool gadget.

- This is the house **which** Jack built.

- She ate the cake **which** I baked.

4 that: (الذي / التي)

⊙ is used for things and ideas. It adds information that is important.

- تستخدم (that) لتحل محل العاقل وغير العاقل.

- تستخدم للأشياء والأفكار. وتضيف معلومات مهمة.

- The gadget **that** I bought broke.

- The loom **that** the Egyptians invented is still inspiring modern machines.

- The weaving process **that** required a lot of skill was very old.

لاحظ: يمكننا استخدام ضمير الوصل (that) بدلاً من (who/which) مع العاقل وغير العاقل.

- That is the boy **who / that** lives next door to Omar.

- This is the dog **which / that** ate my food.

Checkup Exercise (✓)

1 Put (who – which – whose): (who – which – whose) ضع

1. The engineer designed the solar robot gadget is very young.
2. The device you bought yesterday needs a new battery.
3. Omar is the boy invention worked on solar power.
4. The man designed this machine is a brilliant engineer.
5. The tool we need to assemble the chair is missing.
6. She is the scientist invention won a national prize.
7. I have a friend can speak three languages.

2 Read and complete the sentences with the words in the box:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. The engineer (which) built the loom was very smart.
2. The toothbrush (whose) was an Egyptian invention was a simple tool.
3. The boy (who) hat is red is my brother.
4. The car (who) runs fast is modern.
5. The player (whose) scores the goal is brilliant.

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

1. The ancient Egyptians used the loom to make SB
 - a food and tools
 - b houses and furniture
 - c clothes and fabrics
 - d jewelry and baskets
2. The process of using the loom required a lot of
 - a colors
 - b skills
 - c blueprints
 - d clothes
3. The loom helped people make for clothes and blankets.
 - a fabrics
 - b inventions
 - c threads
 - d skills
4. The loom had a strong frame. It is made of wood.
 - a silk
 - b wooden
 - c metal
 - d plastic
5. Ancient Egyptians made beautiful clothes and fabric from
 - a wood
 - b linen
 - c plastic
 - d metal
6. The weaver used fine cotton to make the cloth.
 - a tools
 - b pieces
 - c gadgets
 - d threads
7. The engineer was trained to tools needed for weaving.
 - a wear
 - b craft
 - c draw
 - d inspire
8. The museum we visited had old fabrics. SB
 - a who
 - b whose
 - c which
 - d when
9. The child toy is missing is crying. SB
 - a whose
 - b which
 - c where
 - d who
10. This is the tool they used to make clothes. SB
 - a whose
 - b who
 - c that
 - d where
11. This is the new computer I bought for my studies.
 - a who
 - b whose
 - c which
 - d where
12. I need a tool can cut metal.
 - a who
 - b which
 - c whose
 - d when
13. The girl you met yesterday is my cousin.
 - a which
 - b whose
 - c who
 - d where
14. They are looking for the man car was stolen.
 - a which
 - b who
 - c that
 - d whose

15. The teacher teaches maths is very popular.
 a which b whose c who d when
16. The phone I left in the car isn't working.
 a who b whose c that d where
17. That is the girl brother is a famous footballer.
 a which b who c that d whose
18. The computer program they developed is very useful.
 a who b whose c which d when

2 Read and complete the sentences with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

invention - threads - produced - loom - assemble

Ancient Egyptians created an amazing invention. It is called the ① Workers would ② wooden pieces to build it. People used the loom to build fabric by moving ③ up and down. This ancient ④ still inspires modern machines.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word (words) in bracket:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. The toothbrush (who) we bought yesterday was very cheap. SB
2. The engineer (who) invention won at the competition was very happy. SB
3. The invention (who) changed the way people made clothes was the loom. SB
4. The tool (who) the workers used was made of wood. SB
5. The man (whose) fixed my car was very skilled.
6. The woman (that) bag was stolen called the police.
7. The movie (who) we saw was exciting.
8. The artist (which) painted this picture is famous.
9. The person (which) you met is my cousin.
10. The student (who) book was lost found it.

Unit 2 Wonderful Inventions

11. Mrs. Nagwa is the teacher (whose) inspired me.
12. The boy (that) bike was broken is sad.
13. The phone (whose) I bought is very good.
14. The house (who) has a big garden is expensive.

4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

رتب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة :

1. fabric - People - the loom - used - build - to.
.....
2. assembled - of the loom - wooden - The workers - pieces - the.
.....
3. the loom - drew - before - Engineers - a blueprint - assembling.
.....
4. helped - the ancient Egyptians - make - The loom - fabrics.
.....
5. ancient - machines - This - inspires - invention - modern.
.....

5 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٦٠) كلمة عن :

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

The Egyptian Loom

invention - fabric

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



measure

يقيس



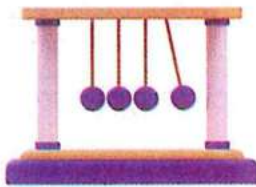
time

وقت / زمن



gear

ترس



pendulum

بندول



design

يصمم / تصميم



accurate

دقيق

inventor

مخترع

workshop

ورشة



Other words

كلمات أخرى

second

ثانية

broken

مكسور / معطل

exciting

مثير / مشوق

exact

محدد

fascinating

رائع / ساحر

our daily lives

حياتنا اليومية

later

لاحقاً / فيما بعد

Europe

قارة أوروبا

accurately

بدقة



Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعابير وأحرف جر وعبارات

Long ago

منذ زمن بعيد

all over

في جميع أنحاء

tell the time

يخبر عن الوقت

manage time

يدير / ينظم الوقت

from side to side

من جانب إلى جانب

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الافعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع	
store	يخزن
measure	يقيس

Past ماضٍ & P.P.

stored
measured

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	
tell	يخبر
spin	يدور
keep	يحافظ على

Past ماضٍ

told
spun
kept

P. P. التصريف الثالث

told
spun
kept

Definitions

تعريفات

gear	ترس	a part of a machine that helps parts move together
pendulum	بندول	a piece that moves from side to side to keep time
accurate	دقيق	correct and exact

Study the following

1 Long ago, people used the sun and sand to tell the time.

منذ زمن بعيد، استخدم الناس الشمس والرمل للاخبار عن الوقت.

2 Later, clever inventors built the first clock.

لاحقاً، قام مخترعون ماهرون بإنشاء الساعة الأولى.

3 The first clock used gears and a pendulum.

استخدمت الساعة الأولى التروس والبندول.

4 The pendulum helped the clock keep time more accurately.

ساعد البندول الساعة في ضبط الوقت بطريقة أكثر دقة.

5 The pendulum moved slowly from side to side.

تحرك البندول ببطء من جانب إلى جانب.

6 One engineer designed a clock that could measure every second.

صمم أحد المهندسين ساعة يمكنها قياس كل ثانية.

7 The workshop was full of tools and small gears.

كانت ورشة العمل مليئة بالأدوات والتروس الصغيرة.

8 The clock design was new and exciting.

كان تصميم الساعة جديداً ومثيراً.

9 The clock design became famous all over Europe.

أصبح تصميم الساعة مشهوراً في جميع أنحاء أوروبا.

10 The clock was one of the fascinating inventions.

كانت الساعة واحدة من الاختراعات الرائعة.

11 The clock changed how people lived and worked every day.

غيرت الساعة طريقة عيش الناس وعملهم كل يوم.

Listen, look, and repeat (SB page 32):

استمع، انظر ثم كرر:

استمع إلى النص:



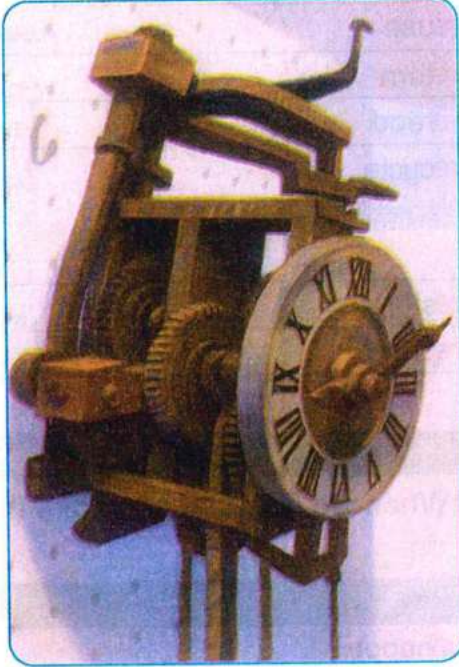
Tape Script

Long ago, people used the sun and sand to tell the time. Later, clever **inventors** ⁽¹⁾ built the first clock that used **gears** ⁽²⁾ and a pendulum. The **pendulum**, ⁽³⁾ which moved slowly from side to side, helped the clock keep time more **accurately** ⁽⁴⁾. One engineer, who studied how things move, designed a clock that could **measure** ⁽⁵⁾ every second. The **workshop** ⁽⁶⁾ where he worked was full of tools and small gears. The clock, whose design was new and exciting, became famous all over Europe. It was one of the **fascinating** ⁽⁷⁾ inventions that changed how people lived and worked every day.

Arabic Meaning

- ١- مخترعون
- ٢- تروس
- ٣- بندول
- ٤- بدقة
- ٥- يقيس
- ٦- ورشة
- ٧- رائعة

منذ زمن بعيد، استخدم الناس الشمس والرمال لتحديد الوقت. لاحقاً، بنى مخترعون ماهرون أول ساعة تستخدم تروساً وبندولاً. ساعد البندول، الذي كان يتحرك ببطء من جانب إلى آخر، الساعة على ضبط الوقت بدقة أكبر. صمم مهندس، درس حركة الأشياء، ساعة يمكنها قياس كل ثانية. كانت الورشة التي كان يعمل فيها مليئة بالأدوات والتروس الصغيرة. اشتهرت الساعة، بتصميمها الجديد والمثير، في جميع أنحاء أوروبا. كانت من بين الاختراعات الرائعة التي غيرت طريقة حياة الناس وعملهم يومياً.



Word building Skills

مهارات بناء الكلمات

What is a prefix? ما هي البادئة؟

- ⊙ A prefix is a small part we add to the beginning of a word. It changes the meaning of the word and sometimes changes the sound when we say it.

⊙ البادئة هي جزء صغير نضيفها إلى بداية الكلمة. وهي تغير معنى الكلمة، وتغير أحياناً نطقها عندما نقولها. و سنقدم في هذا الدرس البادئة (re-) و البادئة (un-):

1 Prefix (re-) (again or back) مرة أخرى

- ⊙ When we add (re-) to a word, it means to do something again.

- عندما نضيف «re-» إلى كلمة ما، فهذا يعني القيام بالشيء مرة أخرى.

Word		Meaning
rebuild	يعيد بناء	build again
rewrite	يعيد كتابة	write again
reuse	يعيد استخدام	use again
return	يعود/ يرجع	come back
reread	يعيد قراءة	read again
recycle	يعيد تدوير	to put something through a cycle again for the purpose of reuse.
		إدخال شيء ما في دورة مرة أخرى بغرض إعادة الاستخدام.
restart	يعيد تشغيل	start again
replay	يعيد تشغيل / عرض	play or show again

- لاحظ، يختلف نطق البادئة (re-) حسب قوة المقطع الذي يليه

2 Prefix (un-) (not or the opposite of)

- ⊙ When we add un-, we make the meaning negative.

- عندما نضيف (un-)، نجعل المعنى متفياً.

Word		Meaning
unhappy	غير سعيد	not happy
unsafe	غير آمن	not safe
unfair	غير عادل	not fair
unlock	يفتح القفل	open (opposite of lock)
untie	يفك الربط	unfasten (opposite of tie)
unkind	غير طيب	not kind
unlucky	غير محظوظ	not lucky

- لاحظ، التشديد عادة يكون على الكلمة الأساسية و ليس على البادئة

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A _____ is a part of a machine that helps parts move together.
 a gear b pendulum c design d workshop
2. If something is accurate, it is _____.
 a wrong or broken b made by hand
 c correct and exact d very big
3. A _____ is a piece that moves from side to side to keep time.
 a tool b pendulum c workshop d gear
4. The inventor built the first clock in his small _____.
 a market b library c museum d workshop
5. Scientists need to _____ things carefully to get the correct result.
 a spin b measure c tell d break
6. The _____ spent many years trying to make a perfect clock.
 a pilot b chef c inventor d firefighter
7. I had to _____ the paragraph because I made many spelling mistakes.
 a restart b rewrite c rebuild d recycle
8. It was _____ kind of the child to take the toy away from his little sister.
 a re- b dis- c un- d in-

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

inventors - in - accurately - changed - from

Long ago, people could only dream of space. Later, clever ① _____ began to design rockets in their workshop. They had to measure every part ② _____. The start was very exciting, and soon a machine was flying ③ _____ side to side across the sky. The first journey was a wonderful creation that ④ _____ everything.

3 Read the text and answer the following questions:

أقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

Before the light bulb, the night was a time of darkness. People used candles and oil lamps, which gave weak light. The invention of the light bulb was a fascinating creation. It used electricity to produce a bright, steady light. This brilliant gadget allowed people to read, work, and live safely after the sun went down. It made streets safer and homes more comfortable. The light bulb, a simple device, completely changed how we manage our time day and night. It turned night into day and improved lives all over the world.

A. Choose the correct answer:

- People used for light before the invention of the light bulb.

☐ a Electricity and solar power	☐ b Candles and oil lamps
☐ c Bright streetlights	☐ d Flashlights and torches
- The underlined pronoun "It" refers to

☐ a the light bulb	☐ b oil	☐ c the world	☐ d the candle
---	--------------------------------	--------------------------------------	---------------------------------------

B. Answer the following questions:

- What did the light bulb use to produce bright light?

- What is the main idea of the text?

- Why was the light bulb considered a fascinating creation?

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

- inventions - one - the- was - The clock - of - fascinating

- tools - gears - was - workshop - full of - and - The

3. measure - second - could - clock - The - every

4. built - first - Clever - the - clock - inventors

5. over - famous - Europe - The design - all - became

5 Write a paragraph of **SIXTY (60)** words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٦٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

The first Clock

measure – pendulum

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



dam	سد	powerful	قوي
power	قوة / طاقة	concrete	خرسانة (أسمنت)
structure	هيكل / بناء	stone	حجر
flood	فيضان / يفيض	protect	يحمي
generate	يولد	supply	إمداد / يمد

Other words كلمات أخرى

southern Egypt	جنوب مصر	material	مادة خام
factory	مصنع	village	قرية
field	حقل	teamwork	عمل جماعي
farmer	مزارع	annoying	مزعج
automatically	تلقائياً	eraser	استيكة
smart pencil holder	حامل ذكي للاقلام	organized	مرتب
container	حاوية		

Expressions, prepositions and phrases تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

flood the land	يفرق الأرض (بالماء)	stop ... from	يمنع ... من
grow crops	يزرع المحاصيل	solve the problem	يحل المشكلة
a clean supply of electricity	مصدر نظيف للكهرباء	face a poor internet connection	يواجه ضعف اتصال بالإنترنت
benefit from	يستفيد من	provide for	يوفر لـ / يزود بـ
(be) made of	مصنوع من		

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

happen	يحدث
flood	يفيض
protect	يحمي
block	يسد / يعيق / يمنع
face	يواجه
collect	يجمع

Past ماضٍ & P.P.

happened
flooded
protected
blocked
faced
collected

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

grow	يزرع
give	يعطي

Past ماضٍ

grew
gave

P.P.
التصريف الثالث

grown
given

Study the following

1 The Aswan Dam is a huge structure in southern Egypt.

سد أسوان هو هيكل أو بناء ضخم في جنوب مصر.

2 It was built by engineers to stop the Nile from flooding.

بناء مهندسون لمنع فيضان نهر النيل.

3 It was built to generate powerful energy for homes and factories.

بُني لتوليد طاقة قوية للمنازل والمصانع.

4 The dam is made of stone and concrete.

السد مصنوع من الحجر والخرسانة.

5 The dam gives Egypt a clean supply of electricity.

يمنح السد مصر مصدر نظيفاً للكهرباء.

6 The Aswan Dam is one of the greatest modern buildings.

يعد سد أسوان أحد المباني الحديثة العظيمة.

7 The dam changed Egypt's future.

لقد غير السد مستقبل مصر.

1 Before you read, think and answer (SB page 36):

Tape Script



استمع إلى النص:



A Visit to Aswan Dam

The Aswan Dam is a huge **structure** ⁽¹⁾ in **southern Egypt** ⁽²⁾ that helps people every day. It was built by engineers who wanted to stop the Nile from **flooding** ⁽³⁾ and to **generate** ⁽⁴⁾ powerful energy for homes and factories. The dam, which is made of stone and **concrete**, ⁽⁵⁾ also keeps water that farmers use to grow crops all year. It helps protect villages that are near the river and gives Egypt a **clean supply of electricity**. ⁽⁶⁾ The people who live around the dam **benefit from** ⁽⁷⁾ its energy and water. The Aswan Dam is one of the greatest modern buildings that changed Egypt's future.

Arabic Meaning

- ١- هيكل/بناء
- ٢- جنوب مصر
- ٣- فيض
- ٤- يولد
- ٥- خرسانة (أسمنت)
- ٦- إمداد نظيف بالكهرباء
- ٧- يستفيد من

سد أسوان بناء ضخم في جنوب مصر يفيد الناس كل يوم. بُني على يد مهندسين سعوا إلى منع فيضان

النيل وتوليد طاقة قوية للمنازل والمصانع. كما يحافظ السد، المصنوع من الحجر والخرسانة، على المياه التي يستخدمها المزارعون لزراعة المحاصيل على مدار العام. ويساعد في حماية القرى القريبة من النهر، ويوفر مصدرًا نظيفًا للكهرباء. ويستفيد السكان الذين يعيشون حول السد من طاقته ومياهه.

يُعد سد أسوان أحد المباني الحديثة العظيمة التي غيرت مستقبل مصر.



Project Idea: "Smart Pencil Holder"

فكرة المشروع: حامل ذكي للأقلام

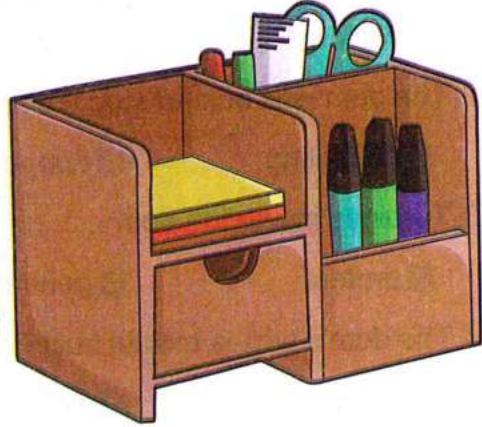
- **Goal:** To help students keep their pencils, pens, and erasers organized on their desks.

● **الهدف:** مساعدة الطلاب للحفاظ على ترتيب الأقلام الرصاص والجفاف والاساتيك على مكاتبهم.

● **Steps:** الخطوات

1. **Plan your idea:** Draw a simple sketch of a pencil holder with separate sections for pens, pencils, and erasers.

١ - خطط لفكرتك: ارسم مخطط بسيط لحامل الأقلام مع فواصل للأقلام الجاف والرصاص والاساتيك.



2. **Collect your materials:** Use recycled boxes, cups, or small containers.

٢ - جمع موادك. استخدم صناديق أو أكواب أو حاويات صغيرة معادة الاستخدام.

3. **Build your gadget:** Cut, tape, or glue the containers together to make your holder.

٣ - انشئ جهازك: اقطع والصق الحاويات معاً لعمل الحامل.

4. **Practice:** Explain how it keeps your desk tidy and helps you find your supplies easily.

٤ - تدرب: فسر كيف حافظ الحامل على ترتيب مكتبك ويساعدك على إيجاد أدواتك بسهولة.

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- The Aswan Dam is a very strong made by engineers.
☐ a factory ☐ b village ☐ c material ☐ d structure
- The dam was built to stop the Nile from
☐ a collecting ☐ b happening ☐ c flooding ☐ d supplying
- Turbines inside the dam electricity for the whole country.
☐ a protect ☐ b generate ☐ c face ☐ d block
- The dam's wall is mainly built from and stone.
☐ a fabric ☐ b wood ☐ c concrete ☐ d glass
- The dam was built to villages and fields from the yearly flood.
☐ a design ☐ b make ☐ c protect ☐ d collect
- The dam gives Egypt a clean of electricity.
☐ a skill ☐ b field ☐ c supply ☐ d team
- Farmers need good water to crops.
☐ a collect ☐ b block ☐ c grow ☐ d spin
- Many homes and factories benefit the dam's power.
☐ a for ☐ b with ☐ c from ☐ d to
- The dam helps the needs of the whole country.
☐ a restart ☐ b provide for ☐ c store ☐ d stop from

2 Read and complete the sentences with the words from the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

crops - generates - collect - block - structure

The Hoover Dam is a powerful ① in America. It is very famous, like the Aswan Dam in Egypt. It is made of concrete and was built to ② a large river. The dam ③ a huge amount of electricity for many homes and factories. It also stops floods and provides water for farmers to grow their ④

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. made - stone - of - and - The dam - is - concrete.

2. one - buildings - It's - the greatest - of - modern.

3. Egypt - a clean - electricity - gives - supply of - The dam.

4. Egypt's - changed - future - It.

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يأتي:

1. How does aswan Dam help farmers

2. it keeps water for growing crops all year

Review

on Unit 2



invention اختراع



gadgets أدوات / أجهزة



blueprint مخطط



tools أدوات



assemble يُجمع



improve يحسن



fabric قماش



threads خيوط



linen كتان



wooden خشبي



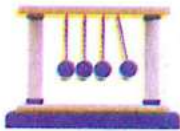
loom النول / آلة نسيج



measure يقيس



time وقت / زمن



pendulum بندول



design يصمم / تصميم



accurate دقيق



gear ترس

brilliant
engineer
solar robot gadget
inventor
dam
power
structure
flood
generate

عبقري
مهندس
جهاز الروبوت الشمسي
مخترع
سد
قوة / طاقة
هيكل / بناء
فيضان / فيض
يولد

machine
solar power
workshop
powerful
concrete
stone
protect
supply

آلة
الطاقة الشمسية
ورشة
قوي
خرسانة (أسمنت)
حجر
يحمي
إمداد / يمد

Language in Use

قواعد لغوية

Relative Pronouns ضمائر الوصل

⊙ ضمائر الوصل هي كلمات تربط جملتين معاً.

- تستخدم لتحل محل العاقل (مفرد وجمع):

1 who: الذي / التي (للعاقل)

⊙ is used for people - the person doing an action.

- تُستخدم للأشخاص - الشخص الذي يقوم بالفعل

- The engineer **who** designed the robot is smart.
 (شخص (اسم عاقل)

- We met the scientist **who** invented the solar-powered fan.

- The chef **who** cooked this meal is famous.

2 whose: الذي والتي تملك

- تستخدم لتدل علي الملكية ويأتي قبلها المالك و بعدها الشئ المملوك؛

⊙ is used to show possession.

- The student **whose** invention won was happy.
 (الشئ المملوك) (المالك)

- I helped the old woman **whose** bag was very heavy.

- They live in a house **whose** windows are always open.

3 which: الذي / التي (لغير العاقل)

- تستخدم لتحل محل غير العاقل (مفرد وجمع) يأتي قبلها شئ او حيوان؛

⊙ is used for things and animals.

- The solar robot **which** has wheels is a cool gadget.

- This is the house **which** Jack built.

- She ate the cake **which** I baked.

4 that: الذي / التي

⊙ is used for things and ideas. It adds information that is important.

- تستخدم لتحل محل العاقل وغير العاقل.

- تستخدم للأشياء والأفكار. وتضيف معلومات مهمة.

- The gadget **that** I bought broke.

- The loom **that** the Egyptians invented is still inspiring modern machines.

- The weaving process **that** required a lot of skill was very old.

لاحظ: يمكننا استخدام ضمير الوصل (that) بدلاً من (who/which) مع العاقل وغير العاقل.

- That is the boy **who** / **that** lives next door to Omar.

- This is the dog **which** / **that** ate my food.



Answers to Paragraphs

1

Lesson 1

A gadget or machine you want to create

I want to create a small, useful gadget. It will be a cleaning machine that runs on solar power. My first step is to design a detailed blueprint. Then, I will assemble the wheels and parts. The gadget will be cheap. It will help moms in the houses. We can use it also at hospitals and schools. This invention will be effective . It will help keep our parks clean.

2

Lesson 2

The Egyptian Loom

The ancient Egyptians created an amazing invention called the loom. The loom was very important for Egyptians. They used it to build fabric by moving threads up and down. This fabric was used for clothes. It helped them have fine things to wear. The Egyptian loom made it possible to produce fine, colorful cloth. Today, this ancient invention still inspires modern machines, that make our clothes.

3

Lesson 3

The first Clock

Long ago, an inventor created the first clock to measure time. It was a fascinating machine with gears and a pendulum that moved from side to side. This brilliant invention gave people the exact time for the first time. It changed daily lives by helping everyone manage their work and activities better.

4

Test Al-Azhar

The Aswan Dam

The Aswan Dam is a very big structure in southern Egypt. It was built by engineers to stop the Nile from flooding the land. The dam's wall is made of strong concrete and stone. It works to generate powerful energy for the whole country. This great project provides Egypt with a clean supply of electricity and changed its future.

5

Test - Unit 2

From: noha@gmail.com

To: salma@student.com

Subject: A gadget I can invent

Hi Salma,

How are you? I face a poor internet connection at home. So, I have an idea for a new invention. It is a small, smart tool. It is simple, clean design that has a light that turns green when the signal is strong. It catches weak internet signals and boosts them automatically. This helps solve the problem by giving you a powerful, stable connection for work and fun. It will be cheap and everyone can buy it. It is very important. The internet helps us learn and have fun.

Yours,

Noha

1 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

threads - required - wooden - electricity - assemble - loom

Aya : What did ancient Egyptians use the ① ----- for?

Omar : They used it to weave ② ----- and make clothes.

Aya : Was that job easy?

Omar : No, it ③ ----- a lot of skills and teamwork.

Aya : Did they build the loom themselves?

Omar : Yes, they crafted the ④ ----- pieces and then had to ⑤ ----- them correctly.

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) in bracket:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- The watch ----- (who) I found was expensive.
- The park ----- (who) is near my house is big.
- The doctor ----- (whose) helped me was very kind.
- The cat ----- (who) is sleeping on the sofa is mine.
- The woman ----- (that) bag was stolen called the police.

3 Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

- To ----- is to put parts together to make a whole.
 a improve b assemble c measure d design
- The first step was drawing a detailed ----- before building the machine.
 a material b blueprint c method d engine
- The wheels of the robot ----- when you place it in the sun.
 a block b face c spin d collect
- The dam was built to generate ----- energy.
 a weak b powerful c annoying d broken
- The tiny ----- inside the clock helps the other parts move together.
 a pendulum b wheel c gear d structure

6. The girl bag is red is my friend.
 a who b which c when d whose
7. The farmer fields are near the Nile benefits from the dam.
 a whose b who c which d that
8. They built a huge structure is made of stone and concrete.
 a whose b who c where d that
9. This is the new gadget I told you about yesterday.
 a which b who c whose d where
10. The woman you met at the library is a famous writer.
 a which b who c whose d where

4 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with a correct word:

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة :

1	fabric	threads	move	clothes	-----
2	craft	invention	produce	require	-----
3	linen	wood	store	concrete	-----
4	factory	village	generate	field	-----
5	gear	pendulum	clock	clever	-----

5 Read the following passage then answer the questions:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة التالية :

Lina invented a useful gadget for her garden. The device helps plants grow by giving them water automatically. She designed her invention using a simple blueprint. The gadget has small wheels and runs on solar power. Lina had to follow many steps to assemble the parts. When she placed it in the garden, it started working immediately. This brilliant invention solves the problem of plants that don't get enough water. Now Lina's garden always has enough water, and her plants grow well without any annoying work.

A) Write true (T) or false (F) :

	T	F
1. Lina's device helps plants.	☐	☐
2. It runs on gas.	☐	☐
3. Lina designed a simple blueprint.	☐	☐

Unit 2 Wonderful Inventions

B. Choose the correct answer:

4. The gadget has small _____ which helps it move.

a pendulum

b gears

c wheels

d steps

5. Linda's invention is _____.

a useless

b useful

c broken

d annoying

6 Write a short paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمسة جمل عن:

Aswan Dam

مجااب آخر الوحدة

structure - flood - concrete - generate - electricity

Test on Unit 2

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. The engineer designed a new flying gadget.	☐	☐
2. The invention will make travel much harder.	☐	☐
3. The new gadget was watched move and drop for the very first time.	☐	☐
4. The brilliant engineer created a new gadget that runs on wind energy.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. To is to make something better, or more effective.

- a** improve **b** assemble **c** design **d** spin

2. Is this map? I don't want to get lost.

- a** broken **b** annoying **c** accurate **d** powerful

3. The machine we use is modern.

- a** who **b** which **c** whose **d** when

4. The boy bike is new is my cousin.

- a** which **b** that **c** who **d** whose

3 Read and complete the sentences with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

effective - broken - exact - design - detailed

A clever student had to fix a ① machine. She first made a ② blueprint so she knew exactly what to do. She worked to improve the old ③ Her clever method was very ④ in solving the problem.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

In a small village, the electricity often went out. A team of young engineers decided to solve this problem. They planned to build a structure that could generate power from wind energy. Working together with great teamwork, they designed a tall machine with large wheels. After months of hard work, they assembled the final model. When the wind blew, the wheels began to spin, creating electricity for the village. The villagers cheered as lights turned on in their homes. The engineers felt proud that their invention could provide clean energy and improve everyone's daily life.

A. Choose the correct answer:

- The engineers assembled the final model after of hard work.
☐ a days ☐ b weeks ☐ c months ☐ d years
- The underlined pronoun "They" refers to
☐ a young engineers ☐ b villagers ☐ c lights ☐ d wheels

B. Answer the following questions:

- Why did the young engineers decide to solve a problem in the village?

- How did the team generate power using their machine?

- What was the structure designed look like?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- The artist (**which**) painted this picture is famous.
- Salma is the student (**who**) project won first prize.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

- accurately - the clock - keep - helped - The pendulum - time

- the - build - People - fabric - loom - used - to

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للأتي:

1. how do the wheels of the robot move

2. The clock's design became famous all over Europe

8 Write an email of about SIXTY (60) words to your friend Salma to tell her about a gadget you can invent to solve the problem of weak connection. using the following guiding elements:

اكتب بريد إلكتروني من (٦٠) كلمة عن:

Your name is Noha and your email address is noha@gmail.com.

Your friend's email address is salma@student.com.

signal - connection

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة


New Message
— / ✕

To

From

Subject

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Send











Unit 3

Hidden Gems of Egypt

كنوز مصر الدفينة

Learning Outcomes

Speaking

- Use common vocabulary related to ancient sites, history, and heritage.
- Ask and answer questions about Egyptian monuments, tombs, and temples in short discussions.
- Express opinions and feelings about visiting historical places using simple sentences.
- Use new vocabulary to describe places, discoveries, and archaeological findings orally.

Listening

- Show understanding of short talks and conversations about Egyptian landmarks and history.
- Recognize key vocabulary related to archaeology, temples, and monuments in listening tasks.
- Identify the main idea and specific details in spoken texts about hidden Egyptian sites.
- Follow short oral instructions related to visiting or describing historical places.

Reading

- Recognize and understand vocabulary related to archaeology, temples, tombs, and fossils.
- Answer comprehension questions about informational texts describing ancient Egyptian sites.
- Identify main ideas and supporting details in short reading passages.
- Make simple inferences about the importance and preservation of Egyptian heritage.

Writing

- Write short, correct sentences using vocabulary about Egypt's hidden treasures.
- Write short paragraphs or blog entries describing a historical place, visit, or discovery.
- Use the present perfect tense correctly to describe past events with present results.

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



burial

دفن



archaeologist

عالم آثار



mummy

مومياء



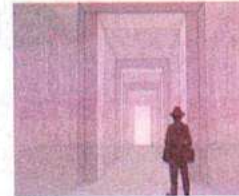
discovery

اكتشاف



chamber

غرفة / حجرة



mystery

سر غامض / لغز

enchanted

جذاب / فائن

researcher

باحث

mysterious

غامض / سري

heritage

تراث

preserved

محفوظ / محنط

carvings

نقوش / منحوتات



Other words

كلمات أخرى

tomb

قبر / مقبرة

style

أسلوب / طراز

museum

متحف

unforgettable

لا يُنسى

ancient

قديم / أثري

mummified

محنط

underground

تحت الأرض

artistic

فني

corridor

ممر

object

شيء / غرض

scene

مشهد

including

بما في ذلك / متضمناً

Greek

يوناني

especially

خاصةً

Unit 3 Hidden Gems of Egypt

site	موقع	secret	سر
priest	كاهن	amazed	مندهش
excited	متحمس		

Expressions, prepositions and phrases

famous for	مشهور بـ	in the middle of	في منتصف
fill with	يملأ بـ	cover with	يغطي بـ
make a discovery	يقوم باكتشاف	travel back in time	يسافر عبر الزمن

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

Present مضارع
amaze يُدهش / يُذهل
fascinate يُفتن / يسحر
locate يحدد موقع / يقع
discover يكتشف
continue يستمر / يواصل
preserve يحافظ على / يصون

أفعال منتظمة

Past & P.P ماض
amazed
fascinated
located
discovered
continued
preserved

Irregular verbs

Present مضارع	Past ماض	P.P التصريف الثالث
lie يقع	lay	lain

Definitions

archaeologist عالم آثار	a person who studies ancient places and old objects
mummy مومياء	a body that has been preserved for thousands of years
chamber غرفة / حجرة	a special room inside a tomb

Study the following

1 Tuna el-Gebel is a famous burial site.

تونا الجبل هي موقع دفن شهير.

2 It is located in the desert near Minya.

تقع في الصحراء بالقرب من المنيا.

3 The area is famous for its underground chambers.

تشتهر المنطقة بغرفها تحت الأرض.

4 Researchers made many exciting discoveries.

أجرى الباحثون العديد من الاكتشافات المثيرة.

5 Archaeologists discovered hundreds of mummified animals at the site.

اكتشف علماء الآثار مئات الحيوانات المحنطة في الموقع.

6 The tomb of Petosiris shows both Egyptian and Greek styles.

يُظهر قبر بيتوزيريس الطرازين المصري واليوناني معاً.

7 The tomb walls are covered with beautiful carvings and colorful scenes.

جدران المقبرة مغطاة بنقوش جميلة ومشاهد (مشاهد من الحياة اليومية) ملونة.

8 Visitors walking through Tuna el-Gebel usually feel amazed.

يشعر الزوار الذين يتجولون في تونا الجبل عادة بالدهشة.

9 Walking through Tuna el-Gebel, people feel like they have traveled back in time.

أثناء السير في تونا الجبل، يشعر الناس وكأنهم سافروا عبر الزمن.

10 Visiting Tuna el-Gebel can help Egyptians feel proud of their heritage.

يمكن أن تساعد زيارة تونا الجبل المصريين على الشعور بالفخر بتراثهم.

Tape Script



استمع إلى النص:



تونا الجبل Tuna el-Gebel

In the desert near Minya lies⁽¹⁾ Tuna el-Gebel, a mysterious burial site⁽²⁾ that has amazed⁽³⁾ archaeologists⁽⁴⁾ for years. The area is famous for its underground chambers⁽⁵⁾ and long corridors⁽⁶⁾ filled with ancient art. Researchers⁽⁷⁾ made many exciting discoveries,⁽⁸⁾ including hundreds of mummies⁽⁹⁾ of animals, especially preserved⁽¹⁰⁾ birds.

تقع منطقة "تونة الجبل" في الصحراء بالقرب من محافظة المنيا، وهي موقع دفن غامض آثار دهشة علماء الآثار لسنوات عديدة. تشتهر هذه المنطقة بغرفها الموجودة تحت الأرض وممراتها (سراذيبها) الطويلة المليئة بالأعمال الفنية القديمة. وقد حقق الباحثون فيها العديد من الاكتشافات المثيرة، بما في ذلك المئات من مومياءات الحيوانات، وخاصة الطيور المحنطة.

In the middle of the site stands the tomb⁽¹¹⁾ of Petosiris, a high priest⁽¹²⁾ who lived more than two thousand years ago. His tomb walls are covered with beautiful carvings⁽¹³⁾ and colorful scenes⁽¹⁴⁾ that show both Egyptian and Greek styles⁽¹⁵⁾. The mystery⁽¹⁶⁾ of how ancient Egyptians created such wonderful tombs and preserved animals continues to fascinate⁽¹⁷⁾ visitors.

يتوسط الموقع مقبرة "بيتوزيريس"، وهو كاهن أكبر عاش قبل أكثر من ألفي عام. جدران مقبرته مغطاة بنقوش رائعة ومشاهد ملونة تميز بين الطرازين المصري واليوناني. ولا يزال اللغز الكامن وراء كيفية إنشاء المصريين القدماء مثل هذه المقابر المذهلة وتحنيط الحيوانات يثير إعجاب الزوار.

Walking through Tuna el-Gebel, people feel like they have traveled back in time. The quiet desert, the carvings, and the smell of history make the place unforgettable⁽¹⁸⁾. Seeing these ancient burial chambers and mummies helps every Egyptian feel proud of their country's rich heritage⁽¹⁹⁾.

عند التجول في أرجاء تونة الجبل، يشعر الزائر وكأنه قد عاد بالزمن إلى الوراء. إن هدوء الصحراء، والنقوش الأثرية، وعبق التاريخ يجعلون من زيارة هذا المكان تجربة لا تنسى. إن رؤية غرف الدفن القديمة والمومياءات هذه تبعث في نفس كل مصري شعوراً بالفخر بالتراث الفني لبلاده.

Arabic Meaning

- ١- تقع
- ٢- موقع دفن غامض
- ٣- أدهشت
- ٤- علماء الآثار
- ٥- غرف تحت الأرض
- ٦- ممرات
- ٧- باحثون
- ٨- اكتشافات
- ٩- مومياءات
- ١٠- محنطة
- ١١- مقبرة
- ١٢- كاهن
- ١٣- المنقوشات
- ١٤- مشاهد
- ١٥- الطرازين المصري واليوناني
- ١٦- سر
- ١٧- يسحر/يفتن
- ١٨- لا ينسى
- ١٩- تراث

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Tuna el-Gebel is famous for SB
 a cinemas b cars c mummies d planes
2. Visitors walking through Tuna el-Gebel usually feel SB
 a amazed b bored c tired d hungry
3. Archaeologists discovered hundreds of animals at Tuna el-Gebel. SB
 a mummified b funny c wild d scared
4. A/ An studies ancient places and old objects. SB
 a artist b archaeologist c doctor d visitor
5. A is a body that has been preserved for thousands of years. SB
 a statue b mummy c chamber d corridor
6. A is a special room inside a tomb. SB
 a desert b corridor c mystery d chamber
7. A new of ancient tombs made scientists very excited. SB
 a discovery b heritage c museum d priest
8. Tuna el-Gebel is a site filled with history and secrets. SB
 a modern b mysterious c small d new
9. The beautiful sunset over the desert was truly
 a ancient b underground c enchanting d preserved
10. The country works hard to protect its important historical for the future.
 a heritage b mystery c desert d scene

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

mysterious - mummified - burial - chamber - underground

We explored an ① site in the desert. The long corridor led to a secret ② Inside, we found a ③ priest. This discovery was both ④ and fascinating.

3 Read the text and answer the following questions:

أقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

Egypt is famous all over the world for its amazing history. When you visit an ancient site there, it feels just like traveling back in time. Imagine walking into a deep, dark tomb hidden under the ground. The walls inside are not empty; **they** are covered with colorful paintings and detailed stone carvings.

These pictures tell stories about gods and pharaohs from long ago. You might also see giant stone statues standing tall, guarding the secrets inside. It is truly fascinating to think about how ancient people built these wonders without modern machines. These beautiful sites are a very precious part of Egypt's rich heritage, and we must protect them.

A. Choose the correct answer:

- Visiting an ancient Egyptian site feels like.....

☐ a going to a modern city	☐ b traveling back in time
☐ c visiting a busy market	☐ d sleeping
- You find on the walls inside a tomb.

☐ a carvings and paintings	☐ b Nothing, they are empty
☐ c modern machines	☐ d flowers and trees

A. Answer the following questions:

- What do the carvings on the walls tell stories about?

- What is the main idea of the text?

- What does the underlined pronoun "they" refer to?

4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

- hundreds - animals - discovered - of - **Archaeologists** - mummified.

2. located - Minya - near - Tuna el-Gebel - is.

3. chambers - famous - The area - for - is - underground.

4. exciting - many - made - discoveries - Researchers.

5. covered - carvings - beautiful - The tomb walls - are - with.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يأتي:

1. what did you see at Tuna el-Gebel

2. The tomb of Petosiris shows both egyptian and Greek styles

6 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٦٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

An ancient site you visited

tomb - chamber

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



temple

معبد



ruler

حاكم



monument

أثر / نصب تذكاري



border

حدود



restore

يرمم

The Temple of Dakka
symbol
god

معبد الدكة
رمز
إله

emperor
tradition

إمبراطور
تقليد



Other words

كلمات أخرى

busy

مزدحم / مشغول

city

مدينة

Nubia

النوبة

wisdom

حكمة

Roman

روماني

different

مختلف

expert

خبير

gate

بوابة

sunlight

ضوء الشمس

peaceful

هادئ

magical

ساحر

treasure

كنز

noisy

صاخب / ضوضائي

crowded

مزدحم

soldier

جندي

experience

خبرة

textile industry

صناعة النسيج

once

ذات مرة

Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

far from

بعيد عن

over time

بمرور الزمن

raise the water level

يرفع منسوب المياه

close to

قريب من

move to higher ground

ينتقل إلى أرض أعلى

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

add	يُضيف
respect	يُحترم
raise	يُرفع / يُرَبِّي
expand	يُوسِّع
decorate	يُزِين

Past & P.P ماضٍ

added
respected
raised
expanded
decorated

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

know	يعرف
stand	يقف
become	يُصبح
tell	يُقول / يُخبر
shine	يُشرق / يلمع

Past ماضٍ

knew
stood
became
told
shone

P.P التصريف الثالث

known
stood
become
told
shone

Study the following

1 The Temple of Dakka has stood for thousands of years in Nubia.

ظل معبد الدكة لآلاف السنين في النوبة.

2 Nubia is near Egypt's southern border.

تقع النوبة بالقرب من الحدود الجنوبية لمصر.

3 The Temple of Dakka has become a symbol of Egypt's long and proud history.

أصبح معبد الدكة رمزاً لتاريخ مصر الطويل والمُشرف.

4 Many rulers have designed temples for ancient gods.

لقد قام العديد من الحكام بتصميم المعابد للآلهة القديمة.

5 Over time, Greek and Roman emperors have added new walls and carvings.

وبمرور الزمن، أضاف الأباطرة اليونانيون والرومان جدراناً ونقوشاً جديدة.

6 The temple once stood close to the River Nile.

كان المعبد يقع ذات مرة بالقرب من نهر النيل.

7 Experts have restored and moved the temple to protect it from the Nile's

rising waters.

قام الخبراء بترميمه ونقله لحمايته من ارتفاع منسوب مياه النيل.

8 Egyptian experts have moved the Temple of Dakka to a higher place.

نقل الخبراء المعبد الدكة إلى مكان أعلى.

11 Egypt has protected its history and treasures.

قد حمت مصر تاريخها وكنوزها.

9 Today, visitors walk through its tall gates and watch the amazing carvings.

اليوم، يسير الزوار عبر بواباته العالية ويشاهدون النقوش المذهلة.

10 The amazing carvings tell stories of ancient gods and kings.

تروي هذه النقوش المدهشة قصص الآلهة والملوك القدماء.

Listen and repeat (SB page 45):

استمع وكرر:

Tape Script

استمع إلى النص:



Far from Egypt's busy cities, the Temple of Dakka has stood quietly for thousands of years in Nubia, near Egypt's southern **border**⁽¹⁾. This ancient **monument**⁽²⁾ has become a **symbol**⁽³⁾ of Egypt's long and proud history. Many **rulers**⁽⁴⁾ have designed temples for ancient gods like Thoth, **the god of wisdom**⁽⁵⁾.

بعيداً عن مدن مصر المزدحمة، ظل معبد الدكة لآلاف السنين في النوبة، بالقرب من الحدود الجنوبية لمصر. هذا الأثر القديم أصبح رمزاً لتاريخ مصر الطويل والمُشرف. لقد قام العديد من الحكام بتصميم المعابد لآلهة قديمة مثل تحوت، إله الحكمة.

Over time, Greek and Roman **emperors**⁽⁶⁾ have added new walls and carvings, showing how different cultures have respected Egypt's **traditions**⁽⁷⁾.

بمرور الوقت، أضاف الأباطرة اليونانيون والرومان جدراناً ونقوشاً جديدة، مُظهرين كيف احترمت الثقافات المختلفة تقاليد مصر.

The temple once stood close to the River Nile, but when the High Dam **raised**⁽⁸⁾ the water level, Egyptian **experts**⁽⁹⁾ have worked carefully to **restore**⁽¹⁰⁾ it and move every stone to higher ground.

كان المعبد يقع ذات مرة بالقرب من نهر النيل، ولكن عندما رفع السد العالي منسوب المياه، عمل الخبراء المصريون بعناية لترميمه ونقل كل حجر إلى أرض أعلى.

Today, visitors walk through its tall gates and watch the amazing carvings that tell stories of ancient gods and kings. The sunlight shines softly on its walls, and the quiet desert around the temple creates a **peaceful**⁽¹¹⁾ **magical**⁽¹²⁾ feeling. Everyone who has visited Dakka feels proud of how Egypt has protected its history and **treasures**⁽¹³⁾.

اليوم، يسير الزوار عبر بواباته العالية ويشاهدون النقوش المذهلة التي تروي قصص الآلهة والملوك القدامى. تشرق أشعة الشمس بهدوء على جدرانه، وتخلق الصحراء الهادئة المحيطة بالمعبد شعوراً بالسكينة والسحر. كل من زار الدكة يشعر بالفخر بكيفية حماية مصر لتاريخها وكنوزها.

Arabic Meaning

- ١- حدود
- ٢- أثر
- ٣- رمز
- ٤- حكام
- ٥- إله الحكمة
- ٦- أباطرة
- ٧- تقاليد
- ٨- رفع
- ٩- خبراء
- ١٠- يرمم
- ١١- سلمياً
- ١٢- ساحر
- ١٣- كنوز



Language in Use

قواعد لغوية

Present Perfect Tense زمن المضارع التام

1 Usage: الاستخدام

⊙ We use the Present Perfect (has/have + P.P) to talk about:

⊙ نستخدم زمن المضارع التام للحديث عن:

1- actions that started in the past and continue now.

- أفعال بدأت في الماضي وما زالت مستمرة حتى الآن.

- The Temple of Dakka has stood quietly for thousands of years.

- تم بناءه في الماضي وما زال قائماً حتى اليوم.

- They have lived in that city for twenty years.

بدأت إقامتهم قبل ٢٠ عاماً وما زالوا يعيشون هناك.

2- things that happened recently with results we can see today.

- أشياء حدثت مؤخراً ولها نتائج يمكننا رؤيتها اليوم

- The Egyptian experts have moved the temple to a higher place.

تم نقل المعبد في وقت ماضى ولكن النتيجة أن المعبد موجود في مكانه الجديد الآن ومحمي.

- He has lost his key, so he can't enter the house.

اضاع مفتاحه والنتيجة أنه لا يستطيع دخول المنزل.

2 Form: التكوين

⊙ Affirmative الإثبات

I, We, They, You, اسم جمع + have + Past Participle (P.P) التصريف الثالث للفعل

He, She, It, اسم مفرد + has + Past Participle (P.P) التصريف الثالث للفعل

- Experts have restored the temple.

- The artist has decorated the chamber beautifully.

- I have finished my work.

- She has traveled to Rome many times.

Note: لاحظ

⊙ كيفية تكوين التصريف الثالث للفعل:

1- Regular verbs: الأفعال المنتظمة

- نضيف للفعل (d,ed,ied)

move → moved

2- Irregular verbs: الأفعال الشاذة

- لا تتبع قاعدة معينة فعليك أن تحفظها جيداً

know → known

see → seen

go → gone

Unit 3 Hidden Gems of Egypt

3 Negative: النفي

I, We, They, You, اسم جمع + have not (haven't) + (P.P) الثالث للفعل التصريف

He, She, It, اسم مفرد + has not (hasn't) + (P.P) التصريف الثالث للفعل

- Many tourists haven't visited Dakka.
- I haven't finished my report yet.
- She hasn't been to the new museum yet.
- My friend hasn't called me this week.

4 Question: السؤال

⊙ Yes/ No question: السؤال بهل

Have + I, we, they, you, اسم جمع + (P.P) ? التصريف الثالث للفعل

Has + He, She, It, اسم مفرد + (P.P) ? التصريف الثالث للفعل

- Have visitors liked the carvings? - Yes, they have.
- Has she made a discovery in the desert? - No, she hasn't.

⊙ Wh- question: السؤال بأداة استفهام

Q. Word + have + I, we, they, you, اسم جمع + (P.P) ? التصريف الثالث للفعل

Q. Word + has + He, She, It, اسم مفرد + (P.P) ? التصريف الثالث للفعل

- How long have you lived near the temple?
- Where has the researcher gone?

Checkup Exercise (✓)

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) in bracket:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. They have (live) in this house since 2020.
2. Hany hasn't (see) a good movie since the summer holidays.
3. I have (buy) a new laptop.
4. My cousin (have) studied medicine for five years.
5. Has she (write) the report to the manager?
6. The cat has (sleep) on the sofa all afternoon.

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The Temple of Dakka is an ancient that has stood for thousands of years. SB
 a research b corridor c monument d mummy
2. Many have built the temple for the god Thoth. SB
 a borders b roles c rules d rulers
3. Experts have worked hard to the temple after the High Dam was built. SB
 a destroy b tell c restore d respect
4. The Temple of Dakka lies near Egypt's southern with Sudan. SB
 a gate b city c temple d border
5. Egyptian experts have moved the of Dakka to a higher place. SB
 a ruler b temple c tradition d gate
6. My dad is a/an in ancient Egyptian history and can answer all your questions.
 a emperor b expert c ruler d priest
7. The Egyptian government works hard to its valuable historical treasures.
 a decorate b respect c shine d protect
8. The Temple of Dakka has become a/an of Egypt's long and proud history.
 a symbol b industry c experience d tradition
9. Salma lived in London for five years.
 a is b has c have d was
10. I have that movie three times.
 a see b saw c seen d seeing
11. My sisters their homework.
 a not finish b haven't finished
 c hasn't finished d not finished

Unit 3 Hidden Gems of Egypt

12. Emad has a new car.
a buys **b** buy **c** buying **d** bought
13. We each other since we were children.
a knows **b** knowing **c** has known **d** have known
14. the students finished their project on time?
a Has **b** Have **c** Are **d** Do
15. Omar his mind about going to the party.
a hasn't changed **b** haven't finished
c finish **d** are finished
16. Have you any news from Sama recently?
a hears **b** heard **c** hearing **d** are hearing
17. I all the milk. We need to buy more.
a drinking **b** drinks **c** have drunk **d** has drunk
18. It all week, so the streets are flooded.
a rain **b** rains **c** raining **d** has rained

2 Read and complete the sentences with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

raised - Experts - stood - symbol - from

I have read a book about the Temple of Dakka. It has become a ① of Egypt's history. It has ② in Nubia for thousands of years. ③ moved it because the High Dam has ④ the water level, so they have moved it to higher ground to protect it.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word (words) in bracket:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. The experts have (**move**) the temple to higher ground. **SB**
2. Tourists (**hasn't**) visited the Temple of Dakka often. **SB**
3. (**Did**) the experts restored the temple carefully? **SB**
4. The temple has (**stand**) in Nubia for hundreds of years. **SB**
5. (**Did**) the team finished their work successfully? **SB**

6. Egypt has (build) new cities.
7. Have you (eat) Chinese food before?
8. (Does) the teacher explained the lesson well?
9. What countries (do) they visited in Europe?
10. We have (go) to the library today.
11. Have you (write) a story about ancient kings?
12. The students (has) become experts at using the old map.

4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

رتب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة :

1. the River Nile - stood - to - The temple - close - once.

.....

2. higher - ground - moved - the temple of Dakka - to - have - Experts.

.....

3. carvings - stories - kings - gods - and - The - tell - of .

.....

4. designed - gods - ancient - temples - rulers - have - Many.

.....

5. near - southern - Nubia - is - border - Egypt's.

.....

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للأتي :

1. egypt has rich history

.....

2. what can you see at the temple

.....

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



tour guide

مرشد سياحي



craftsman

حرفي / صانع



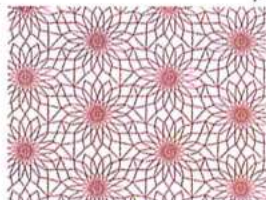
design

تصميم / يصمم



discover

يكشف



pattern

زخرفة / طراز / نمط

royal tomb
carve (d)مقبرة ملكية
ينقش

notice (d)

يلاحظ



Other words

كلمات أخرى

artist

فنان

the same

نفس الشيء / مماثل

the Valley of the Kings

وادي الملوك

drawings

رسومات

notes

ملاحظات

paint (ed)

يدهن / يرسم



Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

welcome to

on pieces of pottery

on the walls

مرحباً بك في
على قطع من الفخار
على الجدران

sound like

kind of

يبدو مثل

نوع من



Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

مضارع

build

يبني

say

يقول

understand

يفهم

Past

ماض

built

said

understood

P.P

التصريف الثالث

built

said

understood

Definitions تعريفات

craftsman	حرفي	a person who builds or makes things skillfully
discover	يكشف	to find something that was lost or unknown

Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

ever خلال حياتك حتى هذه الفترة

● تستخدم (ever) في السؤال في زمن المضارع التام للسؤال عن التجارب .

● يتم وضعها قبل التصريف الثالث للفعل ،

- Have you **ever** heard about this place before?
- Have they **ever** traveled to Luxor?
- Has she **ever** lived in a small village?

Study the following

1 Deir el-Medina was an ancient village where the royal tombs were built.

دير المدينة قرية قديمة حيث بُنيت المقابر الملكية.

2 Skilled workers and artists have lived in Deir el-Medina with their families.

عاش العمال والفنانون المهرة في دير المدينة مع عائلاتهم.

3 They have painted and carved the tombs of the kings in the Valley of the Kings.

قاموا بطلاء ونقش مقابر الملوك في وادي الملوك.

4 They've discovered drawings and notes on pieces of pottery.

اكتشفوا رسومات وملاحظات على قطع من الفخار.

5 That sounds like the first kind of notebook!

هذا يبدو وكأنه النوع الأول من الدفاتر

6 The patterns on the walls show how the workers decorated their homes.

تُظهر الزخارف على الجدران كيف زَيَّن العمال منازلهم.

7 It's wonderful to see how artists lived thousands of years ago.

إنه لأمر رائع أن نرى كيف عاش الفنانون منذ آلاف السنين.

8 Deir el-Medina helps us understand daily life in ancient Egypt.

يساعدنا دير المدينة على فهم الحياة اليومية في مصر القديمة.

Unit 3 Hidden Gems of Egypt

1 Read the dialog and act it out (SB page 49):

أقرأ الحوار وقم بتمثيله:

Tape Script



استمع إلى النص:



Tour Guide: Welcome to Deir el-Medina, the ancient village where the **craftsmen**⁽¹⁾ who built the **royal tombs**⁽²⁾ once lived. Have you ever heard about this place before?

المرشد السياحي: مرحباً بك في دير المدينة، القرية القديمة التي عاش فيها ذات مرة الحرفيون الذين بنوا المقابر الملكية. هل سبق لك أن سمعت عن هذا المكان من قبل؟

Arabic Meaning

- ١- الحرفيون
- ٢- مقابر ملكية
- ٣- نقش
- ٤- لاحظ
- ٥- زخارف

Tourist : No, I haven't. Who lived here?

السائح: لا، لم أسمع. من عاش هنا؟

Tour Guide: Skilled workers and artists have lived here with their families. They have painted and **carved**⁽³⁾ the tombs of the kings in the Valley of the Kings.

المرشد السياحي: عاش هنا عمال وفنانون مهرة مع عائلاتهم. قاموا بطلاء ونقش مقابر الملوك في وادي الملوك.

Tourist : Have archaeologists discovered anything interesting in their houses?

السائح: هل اكتشف علماء الآثار أي شيء مثير للاهتمام في منازلهم؟

Tour Guide: Yes, they have. They've discovered drawings and notes on pieces of pottery.

المرشد السياحي: نعم، اكتشفوا رسومات وملاحظات على قطع من الفخار.

Tourist : That sounds like the first kind of notebook!

السائح: هذا يبدو وكأنه النوع الأول من الدفاتر!

Tour Guide: Exactly! Have you **noticed**⁽⁴⁾ the **patterns**⁽⁵⁾ on the walls? They show how the workers decorated their homes.

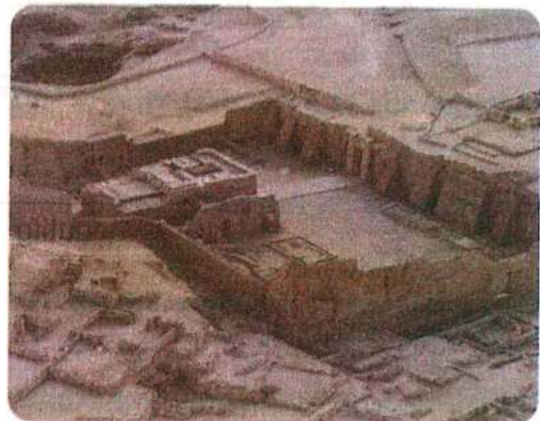
المرشد السياحي: بالضبط! هل لاحظت الأنماط (الزخارف) على الجدران؟ إنها تظهر كيف زين العمال منازلهم.

Tourist : It's wonderful to see how artists lived thousands of years ago.

السائح: إنه لأمر رائع أن نرى كيف عاش الفنانون منذ آلاف السنين.

Tour Guide: Many visitors have said the same. Deir el-Medina helps us understand daily life in ancient Egypt.

المرشد السياحي: قال العديد من الزوار نفس الشيء. دير المدينة يساعدنا على فهم الحياة اليومية في مصر القديمة.





Pronunciation

What is a suffix? ما هي اللاحقة؟

اللاحقة هي مجموعة صغيرة من الأحرف تضيفها إلى نهاية الكلمة الأساسية. عندما تضيف لاحقة، فإنها تُغيّر وظيفة الكلمة (مثل تحويلها من فعل إلى اسم أو صفة أو من صفة إلى اسم أو فعل) أو تُغيّر ما تعنيه الكلمة. ستدرس اليوم اللواحق: (-ify/-er).

1 The suffix -ify

- المعنى: «يجعل» أو «يسبب أن يصبح».
- Meaning: "to make" or "to cause to become"
- الاستخدام: تحويل الأسماء أو الصفات إلى أفعال.
- Usage: change nouns or adjectives into verbs.

Base Word الكلمة الأصلية	-ify	Meaning المعنى
simple (adj)	simplify ييسط	to make something simple
pure (adj)	purify يطهر / ينقى	to make clean or pure
clear (adj)	clarify يوضح	to make something clear
beauty (n)	beautify يُجمل	to make beautiful

2 The suffix -er

- المعنى: شخص يقوم بالفعل.
- Meaning: someone who performs an action
- الاستخدام: تحويل الأفعال إلى أسماء (اسم الفاعل).
- Usage: change verbs into nouns

Base Word الكلمة الأصلية	-er	Meaning المعنى
drive يقود	driver سائق	someone who drives
bake يخبز	baker خباز	someone who bakes
teach يُدرس	teacher مدرس	someone who teaches

Checkup Exercise (✓)

Circle the odd one out:

ضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة:

1	purify	beautify	simplify	teach
2	simplify	clarify	run	purify
3	teacher	purify	baker	driver
4	clarify	beautify	simplify	play
5	beautify	walk	purify	clarify

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The workers in Deir el-Medina built
 a rivers b cars c royal tombs d planes SB
2. The drawings and notes found in Deir el-Medina were made on
 a water b pottery c space d air SB
3. A is a person who builds or makes things skillfully.
 a baker b teacher c driver d craftsman SB
4. The artist used a small tool to a beautiful design into the stone.
 a carve b expand c raise d shine
5. The patterns on the walls show how the workers their homes.
 a amazed b located c decorated d discovered
6. The were built for an ancient king and queen.
 a royal tombs b pieces of pottery c drawings d notes
7. You can see different that people carve on the old temple walls.
 a patterns b mummies c notes d tombs
8. Scientists use special filters to the water before people drink it. SB
 a clarify b purify c simplify d beautify
9. The manager called a meeting to the new company rules. SB
 a purify b beautify c drive d clarify
10. We planted flowers to our garden.
 a simplify b purify c clarify d beautify

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

patterns - Egypt - craftsman - beautify - carves

Welcome to our art museum! Here, every ① designs and paints beautiful ② on pieces of pottery. You'll discover how each artist ③ shapes, takes notes about colors, and tries to simplify things. Their work helps clarify ancient ④

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) in bracket:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Some school students decided to (**beauty**) the park to make it look nicer.
2. The teacher helped (**clear**) the new rule for the students. SB
3. The new (**teach**) at the high school is very experienced and kind.
4. A famous (**design**) designed the patterns on the wall.
5. Modern machines (**simple**) work and save time. SB
6. A (**bake**) makes fresh bread and cakes. SB
7. Has she ever (**fly**) in a plane?

4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. built - royal - in - Deir el-Medina - Craftsmen - tombs
.....
2. daily life - helps - understand - ancient Egypt - Deir el-Medina - us - in
.....
3. notes - drawings - have - The artists - discovered- and
.....
4. their - families - lived - in - Skilled workers - Deir el-Medina - have - with
.....
5. the first - That - like - kind - sounds - notebook - of
.....

5 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٦٠) كلمة عن:

Deir el-Medina

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

craftsmen - royal tombs

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

★ The Valley of the Whales (Wadi El-Hitan)

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



valley	وادي	skeletons	هياكل عظمية
whale	حوت	creature	مخلوق
fossils	حفريات	trails	مسارات / دروب
explorer	مستكشف	appreciate	يُقدّر
Wadi El-Hitan	وادي الحيتان	symbol	رمز



Other words

كلمات أخرى

scientist	عالم	importance	أهمية
Western	غربي	natural	طبيعي
millions	ملايين	generation	جيل
ocean	محيط	hidden	مُخبأ / مخفي
details	تفاصيل	wonders	عجائب / روائع
land animals	حيوانات برية	tour	جولة سياحية
bones	عظام	brochure	كُتيب / نشرة
remarkable	رائع / مميز / استثنائي	slogan	شعار
magnificent	عظيم / خلاب	post (ed)	ينشر / يرسل
scientific	علمي	ensure (d)	يضمن / يتأكد
historical	تاريخي		



Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

deep in	في عمق	covered by	مُغطى بـ
walk along	يمشي بمحاذاة	remain safe	يبقى آمناً
change from into	يتغير من ... إلى	feel like	يشعر وكأنه / يبدو مثل
remind to	يذكر ... بأن		

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	P.P التصريف الثالث
swim يسبح	swam	swum
bring يجلب / يحضر	brought	brought

Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1. on + day / specific date

نستخدم حرف الجر (ON) عندما نشير إلى يوم محدد، سواء كان يوم الأسبوع، أو عيداً، أو تاريخاً كاملاً.

- Our meeting is **on** October 25, 2025.

2 because of + noun/ V.ing

- **Because of** its scientific and historical importance, Wadi El-Hitan has become a world heritage site.

Study the following

1 Deep in the Western Desert, there is a magical place called Wadi El-Hitan.

في عمق الصحراء الغربية، يوجد مكان ساحر يُدعى وادي الحيتان.

2 Millions of years ago, this area was covered by a very big ocean.

منذ ملايين السنين، كانت هذه المنطقة مغطاة بمحيط كبير جداً.

3 Archaeologists have discovered hundreds of fossils of ancient whales.

اكتشف علماء الآثار مئات الحفريات للحيتان القديمة.

4 Some of these skeletons are longer than 15 meters.

بعض هذه الهياكل العظمية أطول من ١٥ متراً.

5 These skeletons show incredible details of the whales' bones.

تُظهر هذه الهياكل العظمية تفاصيل مذهلة لعظام الحيتان.

6 These fossils tell a remarkable story.

تروي هذه الحفريات قصة مميزة (استثنائية).

7 Wadi El-Hitan has become a world heritage site.

أصبح وادي الحيتان موقعاً للتراث العالمي.

8 Visitors can walk along the desert trails and see the fossils.

يمكن للزوار المشي بمحاذاة المسارات الصحراوية ورؤية الحفريات.

9 Visiting Wadi El-Hitan feels like visiting a natural museum.

زيارة وادي الحيتان يبدو مثل زيارة متحف طبيعي.

10 Egypt has protected this area carefully to ensure the fossils remain safe for future generations.

حمت مصر هذه المنطقة بعناية لضمان بقاء الحفريات آمنة للأجيال القادمة.

11 Wadi El-Hitan is a symbol of Egypt's rich natural history.

وادي الحيتان هو رمز للتاريخ الطبيعي الغني لمصر.

12 Wadi El-Hitan reminds young people to appreciate and feel proud of their country's treasures.

يذكّر وادي الحيتان الشباب بتقدير كنوز بلادهم والشعور بالفخر بها.

Tape Script

استمع إلى النص:



Wadi El-Hitan: Egypt's Valley of the Whales

وادي الحيتان، وادي حيتان مصر

Posted on March 15, 2025

في ١٥ مارس ٢٠٢٥

By Salma, Student Explorer

نُشر بقلم سلمى، طالبة مستكشفة

Deep in⁽¹⁾ the Western Desert, there is a magical place called Wadi El-Hitan, or the Valley of the Whales. Millions of years ago, this area was covered by a very big ocean. Archaeologists have discovered hundreds of fossils⁽²⁾ of ancient whales that once swam here.



في عمق الصحراء الغربية، يوجد مكان ساحر يُدعى وادي الحيتان، أو وادي حيتان مصر. منذ ملايين السنين، كانت هذه المنطقة مغطاة بمحيط كبير جداً. اكتشف علماء الآثار مئات الحفريات للحيتان القديمة التي سبحت هنا ذات مرة.

Some of these skeletons⁽³⁾ are longer than 15 meters, showing incredible⁽⁴⁾ details of their bones⁽⁵⁾. These fossils tell a remarkable⁽⁶⁾ story about how whales changed from land animals⁽⁷⁾ into the magnificent⁽⁸⁾ ocean creatures⁽⁹⁾ we know today.

بعض هذه الهياكل العظمية أطول من ١٥ متراً، وتُظهر تفاصيل مذهلة لعظامها. تروي هذه الحفريات قصة رائعة حول كيف تغيرت الحيتان من حيوانات برية إلى المخلوقات البحرية العظيمة التي نعرفها اليوم.

Because of its scientific⁽¹⁰⁾ and historical⁽¹¹⁾ importance, Wadi El-Hitan has become a world heritage site. Visitors can walk along the desert trails⁽¹²⁾ and see the fossils lying exactly where they were found. It feels like visiting a natural⁽¹³⁾ museum, where every fossil tells a story. Egypt has protected this area carefully to ensure⁽¹⁴⁾ the fossils remain safe for future generations⁽¹⁵⁾.

بسبب أهميته العلمية والتاريخية، أصبح وادي الحيتان موقعاً للتراث العالمي. يمكن للزوار المشي بمحاذاة المسارات الصحراوية ورؤية الحفريات مستلقية بالضبط حيث تم العثور عليها. يبدو الأمر وكأنه زيارة متحف طبيعي، حيث تروي كل حفرة قصة حمت مصر هذه المنطقة بعناية لضمان بقاء الحفريات آمنة للأجيال القادمة.

Wadi El-Hitan is not just a place of science, it is a symbol of Egypt's rich natural history, reminding young people to appreciate⁽¹⁶⁾ and feel proud of their country's treasures.

وادي الحيتان ليس مجرد مكان للعلوم، بل هو رمز للتاريخ الطبيعي الفني لمصر، ويذكّر الشباب بتقدير كنوز بلادهم والشعور بالافتخار بها.

Arabic Meaning

- ١- في عمق
- ٢- حفريات
- ٣- هياكل عظيمة
- ٤- مذهل
- ٥- عظام
- ٦- رائع/استثنائي
- ٧- حيوانات برية
- ٨- عظيم
- ٩- مخلوقات
- ١٠- علمي
- ١١- تاريخي
- ١٢- مسارات
- ١٣- طبيعي
- ١٤- يضمن
- ١٥- الأجيال القادمة
- ١٦- يقدر

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

SB

- Egypt protects Wadi El-Hitan to keep safe.
 a oceans b brochures c fossils d trails
- The scientist studied the to learn more about the creature.
 a designs b skeletons c patterns d slogans
- Visitors walk along the desert to see the details of the ancient animals.
 a rivers b trails c streets d bones
- The site has great scientific and importance.
 a history b funny c historical d hidden
- I the effort to protect these wonders.
 a remain b appreciate c ensure d remind
- We must that all the lights are turned off before we leave.
 a appreciate b ensure c remain d remind

2 Read and complete the sentences with the words from the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

ocean - fossils - whale - skeleton - bones

I visited a big museum yesterday. I saw a big whale ① The whale lived in an ② millions of years ago. Scientists discovered hundreds of ③ of ancient whales. These skeletons show incredible details of their ④

3 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

رتب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

1. become - heritage - Wadi El-Hitan - a world - site - has

.....

2. along - trails - can - Visitors - walk - desert - the

.....

Unit 3 Hidden Gems of Egypt

3. Egypt's - of - natural - Wadi El-Hitan - a symbol - history- is - rich

4. by - ocean - This - was - covered - area - a big

5. hundreds - discovered - fossils - Archaeologists - of - have

4 Write a paragraph of **SIXTY (60)** words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٦٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

A hidden Egyptian place you've visited or want to visit

treasure - discover

Review

on Unit 3



burial

دفن



archaeologist

عالم آثار



mummy

مومياء



discovery

اكتشاف



chamber

غرفة / حجرة



mystery

سر غامض / لغز



temple

معبد



ruler

حاكم



monument

أثر / نصب تذكاري



border

حدود



restore

يرمم



tour guide

مرشد سياحي



craftsman

حرفي / صانع



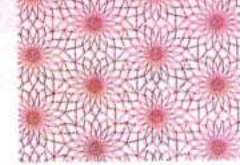
design

تصميم / يصمم



discover

يكتشف



pattern

زخرفة / طراز

enchanted
mysterious
preserved
The Temple of Dakka
symbol
god
royal tomb
valley
whale
fossils
explorer
Wadi El-Hitan

جذاب / فاتن
غامض / سري
محفوظ / محنط
معبد الدكة
رمز
إله
مقبرة ملكية
وادي
حوت
حفريات
مستكشف
وادي الحيتان

researcher
heritage
carvings
emperor
tradition
carve (d)
notice (d)
skeletons
creature
trails
appreciate
symbol

باحث
تراث
نقوش / منحوتات
إمبراطور
تقليد
ينقش
يلاحظ
هياكل عظمية
مخلوق
مسارات / دروب
يُقدّر
رمز

Language in Use

قواعد لغوية

Present Perfect Tense زمن المضارع التام

1 Usage: الاستخدام

⊙ We use the Present Perfect (has/have + P.P) to talk about:

⊙ نستخدم زمن المضارع التام للحديث عن:

1- actions that started in the past and continue now.

- أفعال بدأت في الماضي وما زالت مستمرة حتى الآن.

- The Temple of Dakka has stood quietly for thousands of years.

- تم بناءه في الماضي وما زال قائماً حتى اليوم.

2- things that happened recently with results we can see today.

- أشياء حدثت مؤخراً ولها نتائج يمكننا رؤيتها اليوم.

- He has lost his key, so he can't enter the house.

- ضاع مفتاحه و النتيجة أنه لا يستطيع دخول المنزل.

2 Form: التكوين

⊙ Affirmative الإثبات

I, We, They, You, اسم جمع + have + (P.P) التصريف الثالث للفعل

He, She, It, اسم مفرد + has + (P.P) التصريف الثالث للفعل

- Experts have restored the temple.

- The artist has decorated the chamber beautifully.

3 Negative: النفي

I, We, They, You, اسم جمع + have not (haven't) + (P.P) الثالث للفعل التصريف

He, She, It, اسم مفرد + has not (hasn't) + (P.P) التصريف الثالث للفعل

- Many tourists haven't visited Dakka.

- I haven't finished my report yet.

- She hasn't been to the new museum yet.

- My friend hasn't called me this week.

4 Question: السؤال

⊙ Yes/ No question: السؤال بـهل

Have + I, we, they, you, اسم جمع + (P.P) التصريف الثالث للفعل ؟

Has + He, She, It, اسم مفرد + (P.P) التصريف الثالث للفعل ؟

- Have visitors liked the carvings?

- Yes, they have.

- Has she made a discovery in the desert?

- No, she hasn't.



Answers to Paragraphs

1

Lesson 1

An ancient site you visited

Last year, I visited the Valley of the Kings in Luxor. I was so excited. We entered an underground tomb, and walked through a long corridor to the burial chamber. We saw the perfectly preserved mummy and the colorful carvings on the walls. The mystery of how ancient Egyptians created such wonderful tombs and preserved animals continues to fascinate visitors. It felt like traveling back in time.

2

Lesson 3

Deir el-Medina

Deir el-Medina was an ancient village in Luxor. Skilled craftsmen and artists lived there with their families. They worked on the royal tombs in the Valley of the Kings, painting and carving the walls. Archaeologists have discovered notes and drawings on pottery, which helps us understand daily life in ancient Egypt. This site is very important.

3

Lessons 4&5

A hidden Egyptian place you've visited or want to visit

I wish to visit is the Siwa Oasis. It's a beautiful desert far from noisy cities. It's famous for its salt lakes and tall palm trees. You can enjoy swimming in its clear water and relax in nature's peace. It's a hidden Egyptian treasure waiting for visitors to discover its magic.

4

Test Al-Azhar

Tuna el-Gebel

Tuna el-Gebel is a fascinating site near Minya in Egypt. It was an important burial ground in ancient times. The site is famous for its underground tombs and chambers. Visitors can see many mummified animals and beautiful carvings on the walls. Exploring Tuna el-Gebel feels like traveling back in time.

5

Test on Unit 3

The Temple of Dakka is a magnificent site in Nubia. It has stood for thousands of years. Greek and Roman emperors added new walls and carvings over time. Experts moved the temple to higher ground to protect it from the Nile's rising waters. Today, visitors can walk through its tall gates and see the amazing carvings that tell stories of ancient gods. It is a proud symbol of Egypt's long history.

1 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

tomb - tell - decorated - symbol- artistic - carvings

Sofia : Look at the magnificent gate of the temple!

Zain : It's beautiful. Did the ruler add those ① _____ later?

Sofia : Yes. Over time, many different rulers ② _____ the temple.

Zain : The ③ _____ style here is truly unforgettable.

Sofia : The scenes on the wall ④ _____ stories of the ancient god.

Zain : This ⑤ _____ shows a lot of wisdom.

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) in bracket:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Have they _____ (**tell**) you the secret about the treasure?
2. The different cultures have _____ (**respect**) each other's traditions in this area.
3. My father has _____ (**work**) at the textile industry factory for twenty years. He is still working there.
4. The children haven't _____ (**break**) any toys this month.
5. Has the expert _____ (**speak**) to the researcher about the findings?

3 Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. A/An _____ is a person who builds or makes things skillfully.
 a ruler b craftsman c archaeologist d farmer
2. Nubia is near Egypt's southern _____.
 a temple b corridor c treasure d border
3. I really _____ your help with the brochure design.
 a remind b carve c discover d appreciate
4. The team will _____ the old tombs to keep them safe.
 a discover b restore c destroy d cut
5. The artist made a new _____ for the temple doors.
 a craftsman b valley c design d tomb

6. Karma her mobile in the taxi.

- a** have lost **b** lose **c** has lost **d** losing

7. Experts the Temple of Dakka carefully.

- a** restores **b** has restored
c have restored **d** resorting

8. She has the new ticket machine.

- a** trying **b** try **c** tries **d** tried

9. the team finished their work successfully?

- a** Has **b** Did **c** Does **d** Is

10. We since April.

- a** not meet **b** hasn't met **c** haven't met **d** doesn't meet

4 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with a correct word:

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة :

1	trainer	worker	clarify	driver	-----
2	tombs	valleys	notes	houses	-----
3	simplify	purify	driver	beautify	-----
4	tour guide	design	discover	carve	-----
5	historical	scientific	mummy	fascinating	-----

5 Read the text and answer the following questions:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة التالية :

Deep in the jungle, explorers made a remarkable discovery: a lost city. This ancient site was a mystery for centuries. They found tall monuments and stone temples. The design of the buildings was magnificent. Archaeologists found a special burial chamber with a mummified ruler. This historical site helps us understand how these people lived. It is important to protect this heritage for future generations.

A) Write true (T) or false (F) :

	T	F
1. The archaeologists found a skeleton.	☐	☐
2. This historical site helps us understand how people lived.	☐	☐
3. It is not important to protect ancient sites.	☐	☐

Unit 3 Hidden Gems of Egypt

B. Choose the correct answer:

4. The lost city was a for centuries.

a monument

b temple

c mystery

d chamber

5. The of the buildings was magnificent.

a ruler

b design

c heritage

d jungle

6 Write a short paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمسة جمل عن:

Tuna el-Gebel

مجااب آخر الوحدة

site - burial - chambers - mummified - explore

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test on Unit 3

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. Salma is fourteen years old.	☐	☐
2. Last month, she explored a fascinating temple in Upper Egypt.	☐	☐
3. During her visit, she saw amazing statues on the walls.	☐	☐
4. Salma dreams of becoming a/an archaeologist.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. It took a team of experts three years to the damaged paintings.

- a** design **b** remind **c** restore **d** carve

2. This water filter is used to drinking water.

- a** beautify **b** purify **c** clarify **d** simplify

3. Have you a football player before?

- a** meet **b** meeting **c** meets **d** met

4. She has all the sandwiches.

- a** eat **b** ate **c** eaten **d** eats

3 Read and complete the sentences with the words from the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

preserved - burial - tradition - mystery - carvings

Researchers located an underground site far from any city. It was a ¹ site filled with chambers and long corridors. Inside, they found many objects, including ² food and treasures. The walls were covered with ³ that tell stories. This discovery solved an ancient ⁴

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Our tour guide welcomed us to Ras Mohammed, a magnificent national park at the southern tip of the **Sinai Peninsula** شبة جزيرة سيناء. We were excited to explore this natural wonder, which is famous for its enchanting coral reefs and clear blue waters.

We walked along the desert trails. The guide explained that the area is a protected heritage site, home to a remarkable variety of sea creatures. We went snorkeling and saw colorful fish, sea turtles, and even dolphins. The experience was truly unforgettable. We left feeling proud that we saw such a magical place.

A. Choose the correct answer:

- Ras Mohammed is famous for
☐ a statues and gates ☐ b skeletons and fossils
☐ c coral reefs and blue waters ☐ d kings and queens
- The snorkeling experience allowed them to see a world of sea creatures.
☐ a new ☐ b magnificent ☐ c different ☐ d deep

B. Answer the following questions:

- Where is Ras Mohammed National Park located?

- What is the main idea of the text?

- How did the visitors feel after leaving this magical place?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- Engineers have (**build**) several new bridges. SB

- (**Does**) your brother found a new job?

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

- body - from - A mummy - ancient - is - a preserved - times.

2. skeletons - than - 15 - metres - are - The - longer.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. why is Wadi El-Hitan special

2. a teacher helps students learn

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the following guiding elements:

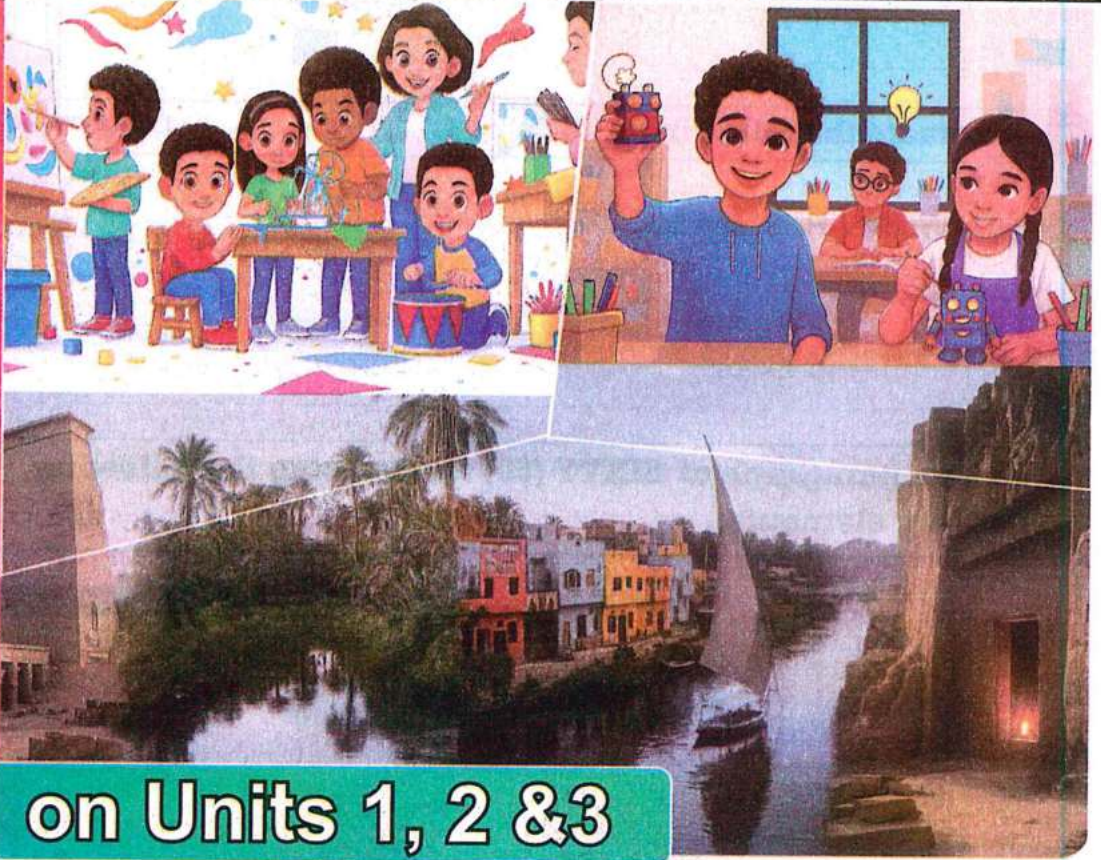
اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٦٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

A famous temple

carvings - experts

Review 1



on Units 1, 2 & 3

Objectives of Review 1

- To revise the vocabulary and language from Units 3 - 1.

- يراجع التلاميذ المفردات والقواعد اللغوية الموجودة بالوحدات من ١ إلى ٣.

- To revise the key letter sounds from Units 3 - 1.

- يراجع التلاميذ الصوتيات من الوحدات ١ إلى ٣.

- To evaluate progress in Units 3 - 1.

- يتم تقييم مدى نجاح التلاميذ في استيعاب الوحدات من ١ إلى ٣.

★ Units 1 - 2 & 3

Unit 1



whisper

يهمس



canvas

لوحة قماش / قماش الرسم



paintbrush

فرشاة الرسم



palette

لوحة الألوان



carve

ينحت



sculpture

نحت / منحوتة / تمثال



masterpiece

تحفة فنية



art gallery

معرض فني



talented

موهوب



incredible

لا يصدق / مذهل



mural

جدارية



sketch

رسم تخطيطي



The Grand
Egyptian Museum

المتحف المصري الكبير



treasures

كنوز



golden mask

قناع ذهبي



temple

معبد



hall

قاعة



artifacts

مقتنيات / قطع أثرية

Review 1

artist	فنان	history	تاريخ
pottery	خزف / فخار	inspired	ملهم
statue	تمثال	artwork	عمل فني / تحفة فنية
frame	إطار	famous	مشهور
talent	موهبة	photograph	صورة فوتوغرافية
creativity	إبداع	Egyptian	مصري
art exhibition	معرض فني		

Language in Use

قواعد لغوية

Conjunction Pairs حروف العطف المترابطة

1 either ... or إما ... أو

⊙ We can use either...or to talk about a choice between two things.

⊙ نستخدم (either ... or) للحديث عن خيار بين شيئين (أي أن الشخص يمكنه اختيار أحد الأمرين وليس كليهما معاً في نفس الوقت وتأتي كالاتي:

(الاختيار الثاني) or (الاختيار الأول) either

- Inside a frame, there can be either a painting or a photograph.
- You can have either tea or coffee.
- We can visit either the museum or the gallery.
- Mariam will buy either a paintbrush or a new palette.

2 neither ... nor لا هذا ولا ذاك

⊙ We use neither...nor to say that two things are not true.

⊙ نستخدم (neither ... nor) لنقول أن شيئين غير صحيحين (أي أننا ننتفي خيارين أو شيئين معاً) وتأتي كالاتي:

(الاختيار الثاني) nor (الاختيار الأول) neither

- Art is neither boring nor difficult.
- I like neither coffee nor tea.
- The movie was neither interesting nor fun.
- He wants neither to go home nor to stay here.

2 both ... and كلا من ... و

⊙ We use both...and to say that two things are true at the same time.

⊙ نستخدم (both...and) لنقول أن شيئين صحيحان في نفس الوقت (أي أننا نؤكد على جمع شيئين أو فكرتين معاً) وتأتي كالاتي:

(الشئ الثاني) and (الشئ الأول) both

- I like both coffee and tea.
- The movie was both interesting and exciting.
- Both painting and sculpture show talent and creativity.
- Both Ali and Sara are doctors.

Unit 2



invention اختراع



gadgets أدوات / أجهزة



blueprint مخطط



tools أدوات



assemble يُجمَع



improve يحسن



fabric قماش



threads خيوط



linen كتان



wooden خشبي



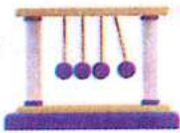
loom النول / آلة نسيج



measure يقيس



time وقت / زمن



pendulum بندول



design تصميم / تصميم



accurate دقيق



gear ترس

brilliant
engineer
solar robot gadget
inventor
dam
power
structure
flood
generate

عبقري
مهندس
جهاز الروبوت الشمسي
مخترع
سد
قوة / طاقة
هيكل / بناء
فيضان / فيض
يولد

machine
solar power
workshop
powerful
concrete
stone
protect
supply

آلة
الطاقة الشمسية
ورشة
قوي
خرسانة (أسمنت)
حجر
يحمي
إمداد / يمد

Language in Use

Relative Pronouns ضمائر الوصل

⊙ ضمائر الوصل هي كلمات تربط جملتين معاً.

1 who: الذى / التى (للعاقل)

- تستخدم لتحل محل العاقل (مفرد وجمع):

⊙ is used for people - the person doing an action.

- تستخدم للأشخاص - الشخص الذي يقوم بالفعل

- The engineer **who** designed the robot is smart.
 ↳ شخص (اسم عاقل)

- We met the scientist **who** invented the solar-powered fan.

- The chef **who** cooked this meal is famous.

2 whose: الذى / التى تملك

- تستخدم لتدل على الملكية ويأتى قبلها المالك وبعدها الشئ المملوك:

⊙ is used to show possession.

- The student **whose** invention won was happy.
 ↳ الشئ المملوك ↳ المالك

- I helped the old woman **whose** bag was very heavy.

- They live in a house **whose** windows are always open.

3 which: الذى / التى (لغير العاقل)

- تستخدم لتحل محل غير العاقل (مفرد وجمع) يأتى قبلها شئ او حيوان:

⊙ is used for things and animals.

- The solar robot **which** has wheels is a cool gadget.

- This is the house **which** Jack built.

- She ate the cake **which** I baked.

4 that: الذى / التى

⊙ is used for things and ideas. It adds information that is important.

- تستخدم لتحل محل العاقل وغير العاقل.

- تستخدم للأشياء والأفكار. وتضيف معلومات مهمة.

- The gadget **that** I bought broke.

- The loom **that** the Egyptians invented is still inspiring modern machines.

- The weaving process **that** required a lot of skill was very old.

لاحظ: يمكننا استخدام ضمير الوصل (that) بدلاً من (who/which) مع العاقل وغير العاقل.

- That is the boy **who / that** lives next door to Omar.

- This is the dog **which / that** ate my food.

Unit 3



burial

دفن



archaeologist

عالم آثار



mummy

مومياء



discovery

اكتشاف



chamber

غرفة / حجرة



mystery

سرغامض / لغز



temple

معبد



ruler

حاكم



monument

أثر / نصب تذكاري



border

حدود



restore

يرمم



tour guide

مرشد سياحي



craftsman

حرفي / صانع



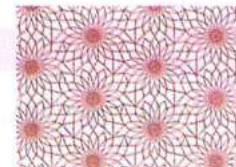
design

تصميم / يصمم



discover

يكتشف



pattern

زخرفة / طراز

enchancing
mysterious
preserved
The Temple of Dakka
symbol
god
royal tomb
valley
whale
fossils
explorer
Wadi El-Hitan

جذاب / فاتن
غامض / سري
محفوظ / محنط
معبد الدكة
رمز
إله
مقبرة ملكية
وادي
حوت
حفريات
مستكشف
وادي الحيتان

researcher
heritage
carvings
emperor
tradition
carve (d)
notice (d)
skeletons
creature
trails
appreciate

باحث
تراث
نقوش / منحوتات
إمبراطور
تقليد
ينقش
يلاحظ
هياكل عظمية
مخلوق
مسارات / دروب
يُقدّر

Language in Use

قواعد لغوية

Present Perfect Tense زمن المضارع التام

1 Usage: الاستخدام

⊙ We use the Present Perfect (has/have + P.P) to talk about:

⊙ نستخدم زمن المضارع التام للحديث عن:

1- actions that started in the past and continue now.

- أفعال بدأت في الماضي وما زالت مستمرة حتى الآن.

- The Temple of Dakka has stood quietly for thousands of years.

- تم بناءه في الماضي وما زال قائماً حتى اليوم.

2- things that happened recently with results we can see today.

- أشياء حدثت مؤخراً ولها نتائج يمكننا رؤيتها اليوم.

- He has lost his key, so he can't enter the house.

- اضاع مفتاحه و النتيجة أنه لا يستطيع دخول المنزل.

2 Form: التكوين

⊙ Affirmative الإثبات

I, We, They, You, اسم جمع + have + (P.P) التصريف الثالث للفعل

He, She, It, اسم مفرد + has + (P.P) التصريف الثالث للفعل

- Experts have restored the temple.

- The artist has decorated the chamber beautifully.

3 Negative: النفي

I, We, They, You, اسم جمع + have not (haven't) + (P.P) الثالث للفعل التصريف

He, She, It, اسم مفرد + has not (hasn't) + (P.P) التصريف الثالث للفعل

- Many tourists haven't visited Dakka.

- I haven't finished my report yet.

- She hasn't been to the new museum yet.

- My friend hasn't called me this week.

4 Question: السؤال

⊙ Yes/ No question: السؤال بهل

Have + I, we, they, you, اسم جمع + (P.P) التصريف الثالث للفعل ؟

Has + He, She, It, اسم مفرد + (P.P) التصريف الثالث للفعل ؟

- Have visitors liked the carvings?

- Yes, they have.

- Has she made a discovery in the desert?

- No, she hasn't.

Test on Units 1, 2 & 3

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. The Ancient Egyptians built large pyramids.	☐	☐
2. Most Ancient Egyptians were fishermen.	☐	☐
3. The Egyptian king was called a Pharaoh.	☐	☐
4. They used hieroglyphics for writing.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The artist mixed colors carefully on her before starting the mural on the school wall. SB

- a** sculpture **b** palette **c** sketch **d** canvas

2. The engineer studied the of the new flying car before assembling its parts. SB

- a** blueprint **b** pendulum **c** chamber **d** border

3. The inventor we interviewed shared many helpful tips. SB

- a** whose **b** when **c** which **d** who

4. visitors liked the carvings? SB

- a** Has **b** Do **c** Have **d** Is

3 Read and complete the sentences with the words in the box

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

Kings - doctors - artists - Archaeologists - carved

We visited Deir el-Medina, the ancient village where the craftsmen built the royal tombs. Skilled workers and ① have lived here with their families. They have painted and ② the tombs of the kings in the Valley of the ③ ④ have discovered drawings and notes on pieces of pottery.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

SB

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة :

In an old street in Alexandria, an artist worked silently in his small studio. He covered his canvas with colors, using his favorite paintbrush and palette. On the walls around him hung drawings, sketches, and even a mural that showed the city's harbor at sunrise.

He dreamed of creating a masterpiece that would inspire young artists across Egypt. Next door, his friend, an archaeologist, was studying a sculpture that had been carved centuries ago. They often talked about how both art and history told Egypt's story in different ways. While one man painted the future, the other discovered the past. Their shared determination and love for beauty connected their worlds a reminder that creativity and discovery are two sides of the same spirit.

A. Choose the correct answer:

1. Where does the story take place?

☐ a In Luxor

☐ b In an old street in Alexandria

☐ c In a museum in Cairo

☐ d In a modern gallery

2. What was on the walls of the artist's studio?

☐ a Old tools and fabrics

☐ b Sketches and murals

☐ c Photographs of monuments

☐ d Maps and blueprints

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What did the artist dream to create?

4. How were art and history similar for the two friends?

5. What is the main idea of the text?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس :

1. The engineer (**which**) designed the smart bridge works in the New Administrative Capital.

2. (**Either**) the hospital and the school were opened last month.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. put - in - the ticket machine - **She** - the ticket.

2. pendulum - slowly - clock's - **The** - moved.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. the archaeologist said the sculpture was found near luxor last year

2. do the new electric buses look amazing

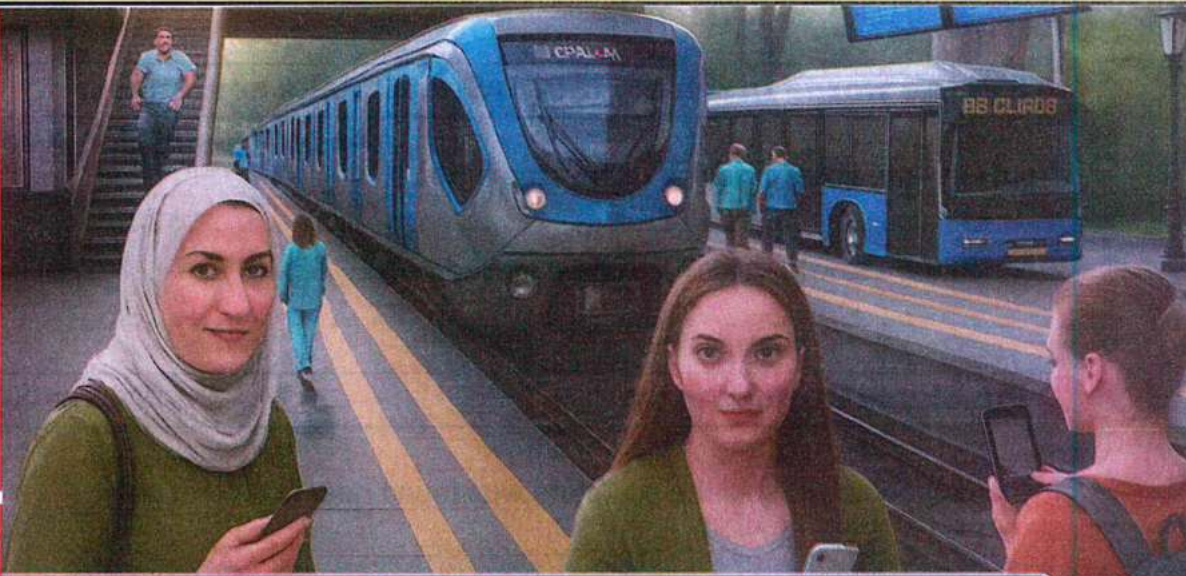
8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٦٠) كلمة عن:

مَجَاب عَنْهُ آخِرُ الْوَحْدَةِ

Egypt's art

inspire - culture



Egypt on the Move

مصر ماضية في طريقها

Learning Outcomes

Speaking

- Use transportation and construction vocabulary in role-plays and discussions
يستخدم الطالب مفردات النقل والمواصلات والبناء والتشييد في المحادثات الثنائية والمناقشات.
- Ask and answer questions about Egypt's new projects and industries
يطرح الطالب أسئلة ويجيب عنها حول مشاريع مصر الجديدة وصناعاتها.
- Compare Egypt's past and present using used to / didn't use to structures in spoken sentences
يقارن الطالب ماضي مصر وحاضرها باستخدام تراكيب «اعتاد أن (used to)» و «لم يعتد أن (didn't use to)»، في جمل منطوقة.
- Describe and present a modern Egyptian city or project clearly
يصف الطالب ويقدم مدينة أو مشروع مصري حديث بشكل واضح.

Listening

- Understand the main ideas and specific details in short talks and interviews about transportation, industries, and Egypt's progress
يفهم الطالب الأفكار الرئيسية والتفاصيل المحددة في محادثات ومقابلات قصيرة حول المواصلات والصناعات وتقدم مصر.
- Follow short spoken instructions about travel, building, or city life
يتبع الطالب التعليمات الشفهية القصيرة المتعلقة بالسفر، البناء، أو الحياة في المدينة.
- Identify vocabulary in context while listening to information about modern Egypt
يحدد الطالب المفردات في السياق أثناء الاستماع إلى معلومات حول مصر الحديثة.
- Recognize key phrases and expressions related to innovation and development
يتعرف الطالب على العبارات والتعبيرات الرئيسية المتعلقة بالابتكار والتنمية.

Reading

- Read and understand informational texts about Egypt's new cities, roads, and industries
يقرأ الطالب ويفهم النصوص التي بها معلومات حول مدن مصر الجديدة، وطرقها، وصناعاتها.
- Identify main ideas, supporting details, and sequence of events in texts
يحدد الطالب الأفكار الرئيسية، والتفاصيل الداعمة، وتسلسل الأحداث في النصوص.
- Recognize and understand prefixes and suffixes (en-, -en) in context
يتعرف الطالب على السوابق واللاحق (en-, -en) ويفهمها في السياق.
- Make simple inferences about how development projects improve life in Egypt
يقوم الطالب بعمل استنتاجات بسيطة حول كيفية تحسين مشاريع التنمية للحياة في مصر.

Writing

- Write short paragraphs describing Egypt's progress, including past and present comparisons
يكتب الطالب فقرات قصيرة تصف تقدم مصر، بما في ذلك المقارنات بين الماضي والحاضر.
- Use used to / didn't use to correctly in sentences about Egypt's changes
يستخدم الطالب «اعتاد أن (used to)» و «لم يعتد أن (didn't use to)»، بشكل صحيح في جمل حول التغييرات التي طرأت على مصر.
- Write a descriptive paragraph about a modern Egyptian city
يكتب الطالب فقرة وصفية عن مدينة مصرية حديثة.
- Create a simple flyer encouraging people to visit a famous place in Egypt
ينشئ الطالب نشرة إعلانية بسيطة تشجع الناس على زيارة مكان مشهور في مصر.

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



infrastructure

البنية التحتية



determination

العزيمة / الإصرار



highway

الطريق السريع



innovation

ابتكار / تجديد



extend

يمتد / يوسع



goods

بضائع / سلع

country

بلد / دولة

economy

اقتصاد

transportation system

نظام النقل / شبكة المواصلات

investment

استثمار

power supplies

إمدادات الطاقة

transport (ed)

ينقل



Other words

كلمات أخرى

project

مشروع

effort

جهد

road

طريق

towards

نحو / باتجاه

modern

حديث / عصري

progress

تقدم / تطور

service

خدمة

well-being

الرفاهية

narrow

ضيق

development

تنمية / تطور

crowded

مزدحم

national

قومي / وطني

patient

صبور

wide

واسع

bridge

كوبري

empty

فارغ

tunnel

نفق

change (d)

يغير

Unit 4 Egypt on the Move

The New Administrative Capital

nation	أمة / وطن / دولة
connected	متربط
prepared	مستعد / جاهز

continue (d)

develop (ed)

reach (ed)

reflect (ed)

يستمر

يطور

يصل إلى

يعكس / يعبر عن

Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعابير وحروف جر وعبارات

in recent years	في السنوات الأخيرة	connect all parts of	يربط جميع أجزاء...
in order to	لكي / من أجل أن	extend road network	يوسع شبكة طرق
work effectively	يعمل بصورة فعالة / بكفاءة	improve daily life	يحسن الحياة اليومية
take a long time	يستغرق وقتاً طويلاً	along with	إلى جانب / بالإضافة إلى
show determination	يُظهر الإصرار	transport goods	ينقل البضائع
show efforts towards	يُظهر جهوداً نحو	bring closer	يقرب... إلى بعضهم

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ & P.P.	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	P.P. التصريف الثالث
connect يربط	connected	show يعرض	showed	shown
extend يمتد	extended	grow يزرع / ينمو	grew	grown
improve يحسن	improved	bring يجلب	brought	brought
allow يسمح	allowed			
progress يتقدم	progressed			

Definitions

تعريفات

infrastructure البنية التحتية	roads, bridges, and systems that help a country work
innovation ابتكار / تجديد	new and creative ideas or methods
determination العزيمة / الإصرار	a strong will to keep trying until you succeed
extend يمتد / يوسع	to make something larger or cover a wider area

Language in Use

قواعد لغوية

1 in order to + inf. مصدر الفعل لكي / من أجل

- He saves money **in order to buy** a house.
- We studied hard **in order to pass** the exam.

2 had to + inf. مصدر الفعل كان يجب على أن

- People **had to be** patient.

3 allow + (شئ / شخص) + to + inf. مصدر الفعل يسمح ل... بأن

- Modern transportation systems **allow** people **to travel** faster.

4 not only.... but also ليس فقط... بل وأيضا

- تستخدم لتدل على أن الشيئين أو الفكرتين مرتبطتين ببعضهما.
- Every new project **not only** improves Egypt's economy **but also** brings the country closer together.

Study the following

1 Egypt has started new infrastructure projects in recent years.

بدأت مصر مشاريع بنية تحتية جديدة في السنوات الأخيرة.

2 The country uses these projects and services in order to work effectively.

تستخدم البلد هذه المشاريع والخدمات لكي تعمل بفعالية.

3 In the past, roads were narrow and crowded.

في الماضي، كانت الطرق ضيقة ومزدحمة.

4 In the past, traveling between cities took a long time.

في الماضي، كان السفر بين المدن يستغرق وقتاً طويلاً.

5 People had to be patient.

كان على الناس أن يتحلوا بالصبر.

6 Transporting goods was slow and difficult.

كان نقل البضائع بطيئاً وصعباً.

7 Today, skilled engineers are building modern highways, bridges, and tunnels.

اليوم، يقوم مهندسون ماهرون ببناء طرق سريعة وجسور وأنفاق حديثة.

8 These projects show Egypt's determination to extend its road network.

تُظهر هذه المشاريع إصرار مصر على توسيع شبكة طرقها.

9 The New Administrative Capital shows how the nation continues to grow and develop.

تُظهر العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة كيف تواصل الأمة النمو والتطور.

10 Modern transportation systems allow people to travel faster, transport goods, and reach work and school more easily.

تسمح أنظمة النقل الحديثة للناس بالسفر أسرع، ونقل البضائع، والوصول إلى العمل والمدرسة بسهولة أكبر.

Tape Script



استمع إلى النص:



Egypt has started new **infrastructure**⁽¹⁾ projects in recent years. These are projects and **services**,⁽²⁾ such as **transportation**⁽³⁾ and **power supplies**,⁽⁴⁾ that the country uses in order to work **effectively**⁽⁵⁾. In the past, roads were **narrow**,⁽⁶⁾ often **crowded**,⁽⁷⁾ and traveling between cities took a long time. People had to be **patient**,⁽⁸⁾ and **transporting goods**⁽⁹⁾ was slow and difficult.

بدأت مصر مشاريع بنية تحتية جديدة في السنوات الأخيرة. وهذه مشاريع وخدمات، مثل النقل والمواصلات وإمدادات الطاقة، تستخدمها البلد لكي تعمل بكفاءة. في الماضي، كانت الطرق ضيقة ومزدحمة في كثير من الأحيان، وكان السفر بين المدن يستغرق وقتاً طويلاً. كان على الناس أن يتحلوا بالصبر، وكان نقل البضائع بطيئاً وصعباً.

Today, skilled engineers are building modern **highways**,⁽¹⁰⁾ bridges, and **tunnels**⁽¹¹⁾ that **connect**⁽¹²⁾ all parts of the country. These projects show Egypt's **determination**⁽¹³⁾ to **extend**⁽¹⁴⁾ its **road network**⁽¹⁵⁾ and improve daily life. The **New Administrative Capital**,⁽¹⁶⁾ along with the new bridges in Cairo, shows how the **nation**⁽¹⁷⁾ continues to grow and **develop**⁽¹⁸⁾.

اليوم، يقوم مهندسون ماهرون ببناء طرق سريعة وجسور وأنفاق حديثة تربط جميع أنحاء البلاد. وتُظهر هذه المشاريع إصرار مصر على توسيع شبكة طرقها وتحسين الحياة اليومية. وتُظهر العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة، إلى جانب الجسور الجديدة في القاهرة، كيف تواصل الأمة النمو والتطور.

Modern **transportation systems**⁽¹⁹⁾ **allow**⁽²⁰⁾ people to travel faster, transport goods, and reach work and school more easily. Every new project not only improves Egypt's **economy**⁽²¹⁾ but also brings the country closer together, making it more connected and prepared for the future.

تسمح أنظمة النقل الحديثة للناس بالسفر بشكل أسرع، ونقل البضائع، والوصول إلى العمل والمدرسة بسهولة أكبر. لا يقتصر كل مشروع جديد على تحسين اقتصاد مصر فحسب، بل يقرب البلد أيضاً من بعضه، مما يجعلها أكثر ترابطاً واستعداداً للمستقبل.

Egypt's **investment**⁽²²⁾ in infrastructure shows its **efforts**⁽²³⁾ towards projects to **progress**⁽²⁴⁾ and the **well-being**⁽²⁵⁾ of its people.

يُظهر استثمار مصر في البنية التحتية جهودها المبذولة نحو مشاريع تحقق التقدم والرفاهية لشعبها.

Arabic Meaning

- ١- البنية التحتية
- ٢- خدمات
- ٣- شبكة النقل
- ٤- إمدادات الطاقة
- ٥- بكفاءة
- ٦- ضيق
- ٧- مزدحم
- ٨- صور
- ٩- نقل البضائع
- ١٠- الطق السريعة
- ١١- أنفاق
- ١٢- تربط/تصل
- ١٣- إصرار/عزيمة
- ١٤- يوسع
- ١٥- شبكة الطرق
- ١٦- العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة
- ١٧- أمة
- ١٨- تتطور
- ١٩- أنظمة النقل
- ٢٠- تسمح
- ٢١- اقتصاد
- ٢٢- استثمار
- ٢٣- مجهودات
- ٢٤- تقدم
- ٢٥- الرفاهية

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The government shows great _____ in completing national projects. SB
 a infrastructure b transportation c determination d tunnel
2. Egypt has improved its _____ through new roads, bridges, and tunnels. SB
 a sports b goods c infrastructure d determination
3. The country continues to _____ its road network every year. SB
 a reflect b extend c transport d show
4. Modern projects reflect Egypt's creativity and _____. SB
 a innovation b nation c goods d highways
5. Teams of engineers work hard to build modern _____ to connect all parts of the country. SB
 a investments b highways c supplies d goods
6. Modern _____ systems allow people to reach work and school more quickly.
 a transportation b effort c investment d innovation
7. They had to work late _____ to finish the report on time.
 a along with b in order c bring d improve
8. The new highways make it easier to _____ goods from one city to another.
 a transport b service c narrow d develop
9. The train was so _____ that I couldn't find a seat.
 a wide b empty c modern d crowded
10. Engineers are working to _____ a faster transportation system.
 a reach b reflect c develop d change

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

future - innovation - reaching – services – narrow

The New Administrative Capital is a great project. It reflects Egypt's ① This new city will have wide roads instead of ②, crowded ones. Along with modern ③ and stable power supplies, it is designed to bring communities closer and create a better, more modern environment for its people, showing efforts towards a brighter ④

3 Read the text and answer the following questions:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

Layla dreams of a greener nation. She closes her eyes and sees wide parks instead of crowded, narrow streets. Her dream is a national project to create "green areas" for every city. This effort would reflect a modern and new ways to change the concrete landscape. She knows it will take a long time, but her determination is strong. She believes this change is not a luxury, رفاهية, but a necessary service for a healthier country.

A. Choose the correct answer:

1. Layla believes this change is not a luxury, but a necessary for a healthier country.

- a** nation **b** innovation **c** well-being **d** service

2. The underlined pronoun "She" refers to

- a** Layla **b** Layla's vision
c Layla's dream **d** Layla's determination

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage?

4. In the passage, what does the phrase "green areas" most likely mean?

5. Summarize Layla's plan and her two main reasons for it.

4 Put the word sin the correct order to make sentences

رتب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة

1. slow - was - **Transporting** - difficult - goods - and

2. systems - people - faster - **Modern** - travel - transportation - allow - to

3. highways - building - **Skilled** - modern - are - engineers

4. started - infrastructure - in - years - **Egypt** - new - recent - projects - has

5. between - a long - **Traveling** - cities - took - time

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يأتي:

1. What problems did egypt have with roads in the past

2. the country continues to extend its road network every year

6 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٦٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب عنه آخر الوحدة

New construction projects in Egypt

improve transportation - economy

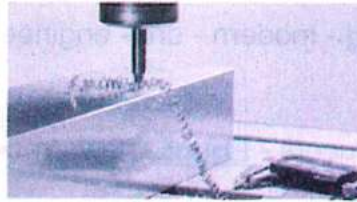
Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



textile

نسيج / منسوجات



manufacture

تصنيع / يصنع



steel industry

صناعة الصلب



power source

مصدر طاقة



industrial

صناعي



self-reliant

مكتف ذاتيًا

economy

اقتصاد

produce (d)

ينتج

product

منتج

contribute (d)

يساهم / يشارك

Other words

كلمات أخرى

the Middle East

الشرق الأوسط

different

مختلف

mainly

بشكل رئيسي / أساسي

farming

زراعة

local jobs

وظائف محلية

factory

مصنع

machine

آلة

fewer

أقل

greatly

بشكل كبير

high-quality

جودة عالية

natural gas

الغاز الطبيعي

solar energy

الطاقة الشمسية

wind energy

طاقة الرياح

teamwork

العمل الجماعي

fuel

وقود

cement

إسمنت

textbooks

كتب مدرسية

advanced

متقدم / حديث

export

يصدّر / تصدير

import

يستورد / استيراد

exist (ed)

يوجد / يتواجد

clear (ed)

يوضح / يزيل

Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعابير وحروف جر وعبارات

depend on يعتمد على
 get products from يحصل على المنتجات من
 create clean power for يولد طاقة نظيفة لـ
 contribute to a growing economy يساهم في نمو الاقتصاد

grow stronger يصبح أقوى
 believe in يؤمن بـ
 light up يضيء / ينير
 walk long distances to يمشي مسافات طويلة لـ

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

produce ينتج
 manufacture يصنع
 develop يتطور
 believe in يؤمن بـ
 exist يوجد

Past ماضٍ & P.P.

produced
 manufactured
 developed
 believed in
 existed

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

sell يبيع
 light up يضيء

Past ماضٍ

sold
 lit/lighted
 up

P.P. التصريف الثالث

sold
 lit/lighted
 up

Definitions

تعريفات

manufacture	يصنع	to produce goods using machines
self-reliant	مكتف ذاتيًا	depending on itself

Study the following

1 Egypt is becoming one of the strongest industrial countries in Africa and the Middle East. مصر بصدد أن تصبح واحدة من أقوى الدول الصناعية في أفريقيا والشرق الأوسط.

2 People used to depend mainly on farming and small local jobs. كان الناس يعتمدون بشكل رئيسي على الزراعة والوظائف المحلية الصغيرة.

3 Most villages didn't use to have factories or machines. لم يكن لدى معظم القرى مصانع أو آلات.

4 We used to get many products from other countries. كنا نحصل على العديد من المنتجات من دول أخرى.

5 The textile industry produces high-quality clothes and fabrics. تنتج صناعة النسيج ملابس وأقمشة عالية الجودة.

Unit 4 Egypt on the Move

6 The food industry now manufactures many Egyptian products.

تقوم صناعة الأغذية الآن بتصنيع العديد من المنتجات المصرية.

7 Egypt has also developed a strong steel industry.

طورت مصر أيضاً صناعة قوية للصلب.

8 New power sources are being used to create clean power for homes and factories.

تُستخدم مصادر طاقة جديدة لتوليد طاقة نظيفة للمنازل والمصانع.

9 These changes have made Egypt more modern and more self-reliant.

جعلت هذه التغييرات مصر أكثر حداثة وأكثر اكتفاءً ذاتياً.

10 As the country builds new factories, more Egyptians find work and contribute to a growing economy.

مع بناء الدولة لمصانع جديدة، يجد المزيد من المصريين عملاً ويساهمون في اقتصاد متنامٍ.

11 Egypt's industries show how a nation can grow stronger when it believes in innovation, hard work, and teamwork.

تظهر صناعات مصر كيف يمكن للأمة أن تزداد قوة عندما تؤمن بالابتكار والعمل الجاد والعمل الجماعي.



استمع إلى النص:



Tape Script

Egypt is becoming one of the strongest **industrial**⁽¹⁾ countries in Africa and the Middle East. In the past, life was very different. People used to **depend**⁽²⁾ mainly on **farming**⁽³⁾ and small **local jobs**⁽⁴⁾, and most villages didn't use to have **factories**⁽⁵⁾ or **machines**⁽⁶⁾. We used to get many **products**⁽⁷⁾ from other countries. Transportation used to be slow, and there were fewer jobs in cities.

أصبحت مصر واحدة من أقوى الدول الصناعية في أفريقيا والشرق الأوسط. في الماضي، كانت الحياة مختلفة جداً. اعتمد الناس على الاعتماد بشكل رئيسي على الزراعة والوظائف المحلية الصغيرة، ولم يكن لدى معظم القرى مصانع أو آلات. كنا نحصل على العديد من المنتجات من دول أخرى. وكان النقل بطيئاً، وكانت هناك وظائف أقل في المدن.

Today, Egypt has changed greatly. The **textile industry**⁽⁸⁾ in cities like Mahalla **produces**⁽⁹⁾ **high-quality**⁽¹⁰⁾ clothes and fabrics. These products are sold in Egypt and other countries. The food industry now **manufactures**⁽¹¹⁾ many Egyptian products such as pasta, juice, and snacks. Egypt has also developed a strong **steel industry**⁽¹²⁾, which helps build new roads, bridges, and houses.

تغيرت مصر كثيراً اليوم. تنتج صناعة النسيج في مدن مثل المحلة ملابس وأقمشة عالية الجودة. تُباع هذه المنتجات في مصر ودول أخرى. تقوم صناعة الأغذية الآن بتصنيع العديد من المنتجات المصرية مثل المكرونة والعصائر والوجبات الخفيفة. كما طورت مصر صناعة قوية للصلب، مما يساعد في بناء طرق وجسور ومنازل جديدة.

Arabic Meaning

- ١- صناعي
- ٢- يعتمد
- ٣- الزراعة
- ٤- وظائف محلية
- ٥- مصنع
- ٦- الآلات
- ٧- منتجات
- ٨- صناعة النسيج
- ٩- تنتج
- ١٠- عالية الجودة
- ١١- تصنع
- ١٢- صناعة الصلب

New **power sources**⁽¹³⁾ such as **natural gas**⁽¹⁴⁾, **solar energy**⁽¹⁵⁾, and **wind energy**⁽¹⁶⁾ are being used to create **clean power**⁽¹⁷⁾ for homes and factories. These changes have made Egypt more modern and more **self-reliant**⁽¹⁸⁾.

تُستخدم مصادر طاقة جديدة مثل الغاز الطبيعي والطاقة الشمسية وطاقة الرياح لتوليد طاقة نظيفة للمنازل والمصانع. لقد جعلت هذه التغييرات مصر أكثر حداثة وأكثر اكتفاء ذاتياً.

As the country builds new factories, more Egyptians find work and **contribute to**⁽¹⁹⁾ a **growing economy**⁽²⁰⁾. People today are proud of their country and how it is developing every day. Egypt's industries show how a nation can grow stronger when it **believes in**⁽²¹⁾ innovation, hard work, and **teamwork**⁽²²⁾. The factories that once didn't **exist**⁽²³⁾ now **light up**⁽²⁴⁾ the future for millions.

مع بناء الدولة لمصانع جديدة، يجد المزيد من المصريين عملاً ويساهمون في اقتصاد متنامٍ. يشعر الناس اليوم بالفخر ببلدهم وكيف تتطور كل يوم. تُظهر صناعات مصر كيف يمكن لأمة أن تزدهر قوة عندما تؤمن بالابتكار والعمل الجاد والعمل الجماعي. المصانع التي لم تكن موجودة في السابق تضيء الآن المستقبل للملايين.

Arabic Meaning

- ١٣- مصادر الطاقة
- ١٤- الغاز الطبيعي
- ١٥- الطاقة الشمسية
- ١٦- طاقة الرياح
- ١٧- طاقة نظيفة
- ١٨- اكتفاء ذاتي
- ١٩- يساهم في
- ٢٠- اقتصاد متنامٍ
- ٢١- تؤمن بـ
- ٢٢- العمل الجماعي
- ٢٣- تتواجد
- ٢٤- تضيء

Language in Use

قواعد لغوية

Used to

اعتاد أن

Usage

استخدام

◎ We use "used to" to talk about:

1. Past habits (actions you did repeatedly in the past but don't do now).

◎ نستخدم (used to) للتعبير عن عادات في الماضي (أفعال كنت تقوم بها بشكل متكرر في الماضي ولكنك توقفت عنها الآن)

- I **used to** play football every weekend.

كنتُ أعتاد أن أعب كرة القدم كل عطلة نهاية أسبوع. (الآن، لا أعب).

2. Past states (situations or facts that were true in the past but are not true now).

◎ حالات في الماضي (أوضاع أو حقائق كانت صحيحة في الماضي ولكنها لم تعد كذلك الآن)

- In the past, transportation **used to** be slow.

في الماضي، كان النقل بطيئاً (الآن، أصبح النقل أسرع).

Form

التكوين

◎ Affirmative:

الإثبات

◎ اعتاد أن (عادة أو وضع في الماضي ولكن لم تعد مستمرة)

مصدر الفعل. **used to + inf.** + الفاعل Subject

- Students **used to** write on small boards.
- People **used to** depend mainly on farming and small local jobs.
- My father **used to** drink coffee.

Negative

النفى

❶ لم يعتد أن (للحديث عن أشياء لم تحدث في الماضي) :

مصدر الفعل + **didn't use to + inf.** + الفاعل Subject

- Schools **didn't use to** have computers.
- In the past, most villages **didn't use to** have factories or machines.
- My father **didn't use to** drink tea.

Question

السؤال

❷ Yes/ No question السؤال بـ «هل»

❸ هل اعتاد أن (للسؤال عن وضع أو عادة في الماضي).

مصدر الفعل + **use to + inf.** + subject Did

- Did students **use to** study online?
- Did she **use to** practice the piano?

❹ Wh. question السؤال بأداة استفهام

❺ للسؤال عن وضع أو عادة في الماضي

مصدر الفعل + **use to + inf.** + subject + did + أداة استفهام Wh. word

- What did most Egyptians **use to** do in the past?
- Where did they **use to** live?

❻ لاحظ: إذا كنا نتكلم عن فعل كان يقوم به الفاعل والآن لم يعد يفعله نستخدم :

فاعل + **used to + فعل** , but now + فاعل + **don't / doesn't**

- He **used to** play the piano, but now he **doesn't**.
- They **used to** eat chocolate, but now they **don't**.

❼ إذا كنا نتكلم عن صفة كانت تصف الفاعل والآن لم تعد لديه نضع آخر الجملة **(are / is / am) not**

فاعل + **(am / is / are) not** + فاعل + **but now + صفة + used to + فاعل**

- He **used to** be lazy, but now he **isn't**.
- We **used to** be fat, but now we **aren't**.

Checkup Exercise (✓)

1 Choose the correct answer:

1. She **(used to / use to / using to)** play the piano when she was a child.
2. People **(didn't use to / don't use to / used to)** have mobile phones 50 years ago.
3. **(Did / Do / Does)** your family use to live in a different city in the past?
4. My grandfather **(use to / used to / didn't use)** tell us stories every evening.
5. I **(use to / used to / didn't use to)** like olives, but now I love them.

2 Read and write the correct form of the word (s) between brackets:

1. My town **(use)** to be much quieter before the new factory opened.
2. **(Does)** your brother use to wear glasses?
3. They **(not/ use)** live in a big house; they lived in a small apartment.
4. In the old days, people used to **(listening)** to the radio for news.
5. What **(do)** you use to eat for breakfast?

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

1. To is to produce goods using machines. SB
☐ a manufacture ☐ b clean ☐ c build ☐ d clear
2. Egypt is becoming more self-reliant, which means SB
☐ a depending on other countries ☐ b depending on itself
☐ c closing its factories ☐ d importing more goods
3. When tourism grows, it helps the country's by creating new jobs.
☐ a economy ☐ b products ☐ c farming ☐ d border
4. Cities like Manchester became centers because they had many factories.
☐ a clean ☐ b industrial ☐ c agricultural ☐ d solar
5. Bridges and new buildings need a strong industry.
☐ a food ☐ b steel ☐ c textile ☐ d plastic
6. My mother works in a factory that makes fabrics and clothes.
☐ a cement ☐ b steel ☐ c food ☐ d textile
7. Many people depend public buses to travel around the city.
☐ a on ☐ b in ☐ c with ☐ d at
8. Teachers depend on textbooks only. SB
☐ a use to ☐ b used to ☐ c didn't use ☐ d not use to
9. When I was a child, I watch cartoons every Saturday morning.
☐ a use to ☐ b used to ☐ c am used to ☐ d using to
10. you use to play football when you were in school?
☐ a Do ☐ b Did ☐ c Are ☐ d Have
11. They used to in a small village, but now they live in the city.
☐ a live ☐ b living ☐ c lived ☐ d lives
12. I like classical music, but now I listen to it all the time.
☐ a don't use to ☐ b didn't use to ☐ c not used to ☐ d didn't use
13. We to the beach every summer when we were children.
☐ a use to go ☐ b used to go
☐ c are used to going ☐ d using to go

14. What language speak when you lived in Spain?

a you used to

b did you use to

c used you to

d do you use to

15. My grandparents study with computers.

a used

b used to

c didn't use to **d** not use to

2 Read and complete the sentences with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

high-quality - manufacture - self-reliant - depend - teamwork

This factory is very advanced. It does not ① on fuel from other countries. Instead, it uses a clean power source like wind energy to ② steel. The steel industry is very important. The ③ product is then used for building or to export. Good ④ in the factory helps produce more. Everyone must believe in the plan for success.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word (words) in bracket:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Ali (**use**) to play football when he was young.

2. We (**not/use**) have electricity in our village years ago.

3. (**Do**) your father use to work in that factory?

4. Mariam used to (**walks**) long distances to school.

5. Where (**do**) they use to live before moving here?

6. My grandparents used to (**grew**) all their own vegetables.

7. What games (**you / use**) to play as a child?

8. Did your mother (**used**) to make you traditional food?

9. I (**not/use**) like vegetables when I was little.

10. Farmers used to (**used**) animals to help them in the fields.

11. Children used (**help**) their parents with farming.

12. They didn't use to (**importing**) products from other countries.

Unit 4 Egypt on the Move

4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

رتب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

1. on - mainly - farming - **People** - to - used - depend -----
2. clothes - textile industry - fabrics - produces - **The** - and - high-quality -----
3. steel - developed - a strong - has - industry - **Egypt** -----
4. didn't - in - factories - large - use- to - **People** - work -----
5. use to - textiles - Did - to - **Egypt** - countries - export - other? -----

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يأتي:

1. how amazing Egypt's progress is SB

2. egypt builds more factories in new cities SB

3. what new industries are growing in Egypt SB

6 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٦٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

Egypt's past and present industries

used to - didn't use to

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



Other words كلمات أخرى

farming	الزراعة	highway	الطريق السريع
goods	سلع	self-reliant	مكتف ذاتيا
field	حقل	traffic	ازدحام مروري
local	محلي	tourism	سياحة
across	عبر / في جميع أنحاء	furniture	أثاث
abroad	في الخارج	coal	فحم
textile	النسيج	firewood	حطب / وقود خشبي
government	حكومة	airport	مطار
industry	الصناعة	worried	قلق
changes	تغييرات / تعديلات	support (ed)	يدعم
trade	تجارة	include (d)	يشمل / يتضمن
technology	تكنولوجيا	reduce (d)	يقلل
progress	تقدم		

Expressions, prepositions and phrases تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

make goods	يصنع سلعاً / ينتج بضائع	look like	يشبه / يبدو مثل
develop industries	يطور الصناعات	feel about	يشعر تجاه
depend on	يعتمد علي		

Study the following

1 Most people worked in fields or small local shops.

كان معظم الناس يعملون في الحقول أو المتاجر المحلية الصغيرة.

2 People didn't use to have machines to make goods quickly.

لم يكن الناس يمتلكون آلات لصنع السلع بسرعة.

3 Today, Egypt has developed many new industries.

اليوم، طوّرت مصر العديد من الصناعات الجديدة.

Unit 4 Egypt on the Move

4 Clothes and fabrics are sold across the country and even abroad.

تُباع الملابس والأقمشة في جميع أنحاء البلاد وحتى في الخارج.

5 Engineers use solar and wind power to create clean energy.

يستخدم المهندسون الطاقة الشمسية وطاقة الرياح لتوليد طاقة نظيفة.

6 The government builds new roads, bridges, and new cities to support these changes.

تبني الحكومة طرقاً وجسوراً ومدن جديدة لدعم هذه التغييرات.

7 Egypt has become more self-reliant and industrial.

أصبحت مصر أكثر اكتفاءً ذاتياً وأكثر تصنيعاً.

Tape Script



استمع إلى النص:



Egypt used to depend mostly on farming, and most people worked in **fields**⁽¹⁾ or small **local shops**⁽²⁾. There weren't many factories, and people didn't use to have machines to make **goods**⁽³⁾ quickly.

كانت مصر في الماضي تعتمد بشكل أساسي على الزراعة، وكان معظم الناس يعملون في الحقول أو في متاجر محلية صغيرة. لم يكن هناك الكثير من المصانع، ولم يمتلك الناس آلات لإنتاج السلع بسرعة.

Arabic Meaning

- ١- حقول
- ٢- متاجر محلية
- ٣- بضائع
- ٤- الحكومة
- ٥- تدعم
- ٦- التغييرات

But today, Egypt has developed many new industries.

The textile factories produce clothes and fabrics that are sold across the country and even abroad. Engineers use solar and wind power to create clean energy.

The **government**⁽⁴⁾ also builds new roads, bridges, and new cities to **support**⁽⁵⁾ these **changes**⁽⁶⁾.

أما اليوم، فقد طورت مصر العديد من الصناعات الجديدة. تنتج مصانع الغزل والنسيج الملابس والأقمشة التي تُباع في جميع أنحاء البلاد وحتى في الخارج. ويستخدم المهندسون الطاقة الشمسية وطاقة الرياح لتوليد طاقة نظيفة. كما تقوم الحكومة ببناء طرق وجسور ومدن جديدة لدعم هذه التغييرات.

Egyptians are proud because their country has become more self-reliant and industrial. Egypt truly doesn't look like it used to - it's growing stronger every day!

يشعر المصريون بالفخر لأن بلدهم أصبحت أكثر اعتماداً على ذاتها وأكثر تصنيعاً. حقاً، لم تعد مصر كما كانت في الماضي، فهي تزداد قوة يوماً بعد يوم!



Pronunciation

1 en- prefix:

البادئة

⊙ (تأتي في بداية الكلمة)،

⊙ **Meaning:** to cause to be or to put into.

تعني (أن يتسبب في أو أن يضع في)

prefix		Example
enrich	يُثري	New roads enrich the country's development.
enlarge	يكبر / يوسع	Engineers will enlarge the road to reduce traffic.
encourage	يشجع	The teacher encouraged us to try harder.
endanger	يعرض للخطر	Fast driving can endanger everyone's safety.
enable	يُمكن / يُفعل	Technology enables students to learn remotely.
enclose	يُرفق	Please enclose your photo.
ensure	يضمن	Please ensure all doors are locked before you leave.

2 -en suffix:

اللاحقة

⊙ (تأتي في نهاية الكلمة)،

⊙ **Meaning:** to make or to become.

(أن يجعل أو أن يصبح)

suffix		Example
shorten	يُقصِر / يختصر	I need to shorten my pants.
lighten	يُخفف / يضيئ	Please lighten your backpack; it looks too heavy.
darken	يُظلم	The clouds darkened the afternoon sky.
widen	يوسع	They will widen the bridge next year.
soften	يلين	You can soften butter quickly in the microwave.
brighten	يشرق / يضيئ	The sun began to brighten the sky.
deepen	يُعمق	They are working to widen and deepen the tunnel.

⊙ **Note:** The prefix (en-) and the suffix (-en) are used to turn an adjective or a noun into a verb.

⊙ تستخدم البادئة (en-) واللاحقة (-en) لتحويل الصفة أو الاسم إلى فعل

Activities

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. People didn't use to walk long distances to their jobs.	☐	☐
2. The steel industry helps in developing the country's infrastructure.	☐	☐
3. The government is improving airports and roads to support trade and tourism.	☐	☐
4. Local businesses mainly sell heavy items like coal and cement.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- The is building a new bridge to reduce traffic.
 a tourism b government c zone d trade
- We should all local businesses in our town.
 a include b reduce c work d support
- The teacher wants to students to read more.
 a courage b encouraged c encourage d encouraging
- They will the road next year.
 a widen b enwide c wide d wider
- Heavy rain can the color of the sand.
 a dark b darken c darkness d darked
- Egypt depended farming in the past.
 a in b at c on d from
- Textile factories in Egypt produce
 a solar panels b clothes and fabrics
 c cement d furniture
- Solar power comes from the
 a sky b moon c wind d sun

9. helps connect new cities.

a Parks

b Schools

c Roads and bridges

d Rivers

10. Egyptians are proud because their country has become more

a self-reliant

b self study

c selfish

d self made

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

goods – local – textile- trade - abroad

The government wants to reduce problems like bad traffic. They are building new roads and an airport. This makes it easier to transport goods across the country and ① Before, it used to take a long time to get ② from one city to another. Now, these changes support tourism and ③ This progress helps improve daily life for all ④ people.

4 Read and write the correct form of the word (s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. New businesses (**rich**) the local economy.

2. The city will (**wide**) the busy road.

3. We must (**courage**) teamwork.

4. Wildfires can (**danger**) many homes.

5 Put the word sin the correct order to make sentences

رتب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة

1. fabrics - sold - country - **Clothes** - are - and - the - across.

2. become - industrial - more - **Egypt** - self-reliant - has - and.

3. use to - have - make - machines - goods - **People** - to - didn't .

4. do - Egyptians - about - the country's - **How** - feel - progress - ?

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



coastal	ساحلي	complex	مجمع
coast	ساحل	pharaoh	فرعون
smart	ذكي / عصري	hieroglyphics	اللغة الهيروغليفية
walkways	ممرات المشاة (ممشى)	culture	ثقافة
tourist spot	موقع سياحي	remarkable	بارز
vision	رؤية		

Other words

كلمات أخرى

northern	شمالي	cultural area	منطقة ثقافية
Mediterranean Sea	البحر الأبيض المتوسط	lively	حيوي
golden	ذهبي	flyer	منشور
sandy	رمللي	giant	عملاق
peaceful	هادئ / مسالم	column	عمود
luxury	رفاهية / فخامة	grand	عظيم
palm tree	شجرة نخيل	attractive	جذاب
university	جامعة	imagine (d)	يتخيل
shopping center	مركز تسوق	gate	بوابة

Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

lie on the coast	يقع على الساحل	full of	ملئ بـ
filled with	ممتلئ بـ	known for	مشهور بـ
turn ... into	يحول إلى		

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ & P.P.	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	P.P التصريف الثالث
combine يجمع / يدمج	combined	meet يقابل	met	met
reflect يعكس	reflected	lie يقع	lay	lain
honor يكرم	honored			
include يشمل	included			
imagine يتخيل	imagined			
turn into يتحول إلى	turned into			
remain يبقى / يظل	remained			

Study the following

1 New Alamein City is one of Egypt's most modern coastal cities.

مدينة العلمين الجديدة هي واحدة من أحدث المدن الساحلية في مصر.

2 It lies on the beautiful northern coast.

تقع على الساحل الشمالي الجميل.

3 The city is designed to be a smart place that combines history, beauty, and modern life.

صُممت المدينة لتكون مكاناً ذكياً يجمع بين التاريخ والجمال والحياة العصرية.

4 Wide roads, green parks, and tall glass buildings make it look like a city of the future.

الطرق الواسعة والحدائق الخضراء والمباني الزجاجية الطويلة تجعلها تبدو كمدينة للمستقبل.

5 Visitors can enjoy peaceful beaches, luxury hotels, and beautiful walkways filled with palm trees.

يمكن للزوار الاستمتاع بالشواطئ الهادئة والفنادق الفاخرة والممرات الجميلة المليئة بأشجار النخيل.

6 The city includes universities, shopping centers, and cultural areas.

تشمل المدينة جامعات ومراكز تسوق ومناطق ثقافية.

7 New Alamein City is a new home for many Egyptians.

مدينة العلمين الجديدة هي وطن جديد للعديد من المصريين.

8 New Alamein reflects Egypt's vision for progress.

تعكس العلمين الجديدة رؤية مصر للتقدم.

9 Innovation and planning can turn the desert into a modern, lively city full of life.

يمكن للابتكار والتخطيط أن يحوّل الصحراء إلى مدينة عصرية وحيوية ومليئة بالحياة.

10 Luxor Temple is a magnificent ancient complex in the city of Luxor.

معبد الأقصر هو مجمع أثري/قديم رائع في مدينة الأقصر.

11 It was built to honor the god Amun and the great pharaohs of Egypt.

لقد بُني لتكريم الإله آمون وفراعنة مصر العظماء.

12 The temple is known for its giant statues, tall stone columns, and beautiful hieroglyphics.

يُعرف المعبد بتماثيله العملاقة وأعمدته الحجرية الطويلة ونقوشه الهيروغليفية الجميلة.

13 It remains one of the country's most remarkable symbols of history and culture.

يظل المعبد أحد أبرز رموز التاريخ والثقافة في البلاد.

Tape Script

استمع إلى النص:



New Alamein City

New Alamein City is one of Egypt's most modern **coastal**⁽¹⁾ cities. It **lies on** the beautiful **northern coast**,⁽²⁾ where the blue waters of the **Mediterranean Sea**⁽³⁾ meet **golden**⁽⁴⁾ **sandy beaches**⁽⁵⁾. The city is designed to be a **smart**⁽⁶⁾ place that **combines**⁽⁷⁾ history, beauty, and modern life. Wide roads, green parks, and tall glass buildings make it look like a city of the future. Visitors can enjoy peaceful beaches, **luxury**⁽⁸⁾ hotels, and beautiful **walkways**⁽⁹⁾ filled with **palm trees**⁽¹⁰⁾. The city also includes universities, shopping centers, and **cultural areas**⁽¹¹⁾ that make it more than just a **tourist spot**;⁽¹²⁾ it's a new home for many Egyptians. New Alamein reflects Egypt's **vision**⁽¹³⁾ for **progress**,⁽¹⁴⁾ showing how innovation and planning can turn the desert into a modern, **lively**⁽¹⁵⁾ city full of life.

Arabic Meaning

- ١- ساحلي
- ٢- الساحل الشمالي
- ٣- البحر المتوسط
- ٤- ذهبي
- ٥- شواطئ رملية
- ٦- ذكي/عصري
- ٧- تدمج
- ٨- فخم
- ٩- ممرات المشاة
- (ممشى)
- ١٠- أشجار النخيل
- ١١- منطقة ثقافية
- ١٢- موقع سياحي
- ١٣- رؤية
- ١٤- تقدم
- ١٥- حيوي



تعد مدينة العلمين الجديدة واحدة من أحدث المدن الساحلية في مصر. تقع على الساحل الشمالي الجميل، حيث تلتقي المياه الزرقاء للبحر الأبيض المتوسط بالشواطئ الرملية الذهبية. تم تصميم المدينة لتكون مكاناً ذكياً يجمع بين التاريخ، والجمال، والحياة العصرية. الطرق الواسعة، والحدائق الخضراء، والمباني الزجاجية الشاهقة تجعلها تبدو كمدينة للمستقبل. يمكن للزوار الاستمتاع بالشواطئ الهادئة، والفنادق الفاخرة، والمشييات الجميلة المليئة بأشجار النخيل. تضم المدينة أيضاً جامعات، ومراكز تسوق، ومناطق ثقافية تجعلها أكثر من مجرد وجهة سياحية؛ إنها موطن جديد للعديد من المصريين. تعكس العلمين الجديدة رؤية مصر للتقدم، حيث تظهر كيف يمكن للابتكار والتخطيط أن يحول الصحراء إلى مدينة حديثة وناشطة بالحياة ومليئة بالحيوية.

Tape Script

استمع إلى النص:

A Flyer⁽¹⁾ about a Famous Place in Egypt

Description:

Luxor Temple is a **magnificent**⁽²⁾ ancient **complex**⁽³⁾ in the city of Luxor. It was built to **honor**⁽⁴⁾ the god Amun and the great **pharaohs**⁽⁵⁾ of Egypt. The temple is **known**⁽⁶⁾ for its **giant**⁽⁷⁾ statues, tall stone **columns**⁽⁸⁾, and beautiful **hieroglyphics**.⁽⁹⁾ Visitors can walk through its **grand**⁽¹⁰⁾ gates and imagine life in ancient Egypt. It remains one of the country's most **remarkable**⁽¹¹⁾ symbols of history and **culture**.⁽¹²⁾

Arabic Meaning

- ١- منشور
- ٢- رائع
- ٣- مجمع
- ٤- يكرم
- ٥- الفراعنة
- ٦- معروف بـ
- ٧- عملاق/ضخم
- ٨- أعمدة
- ٩- اللغة الهيروغليفية
- ١٠- ضخم
- ١١- مذهل/متميز
- ١٢- ثقافة

معبد الأقصر هو مجمع أثري عظيم في مدينة الأقصر. بُني لتكريم الإله آمون والفراعنة العظماء في مصر. يشتهر المعبد بتمانيه العملاقة، وأعمدته الحجرية الطويلة، ونقوشه الهيروغليفية الجميلة. يمكن للزوار السير عبر بواباته الضخمة وتخيل الحياة في مصر القديمة. يظل المعبد أحد أبرز رموز التاريخ والثقافة في البلاد.



Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Alexandria is a beautiful _____ city in Egypt.
 a desert b coastal c sandy d solar
- The new city uses _____ technology to save energy.
 a ancient b smart c funny d old
- The Pyramids are a famous _____.
 a university b tourist spot
 c shopping center d local market
- Ancient Egyptians used _____ for writing.
 a computers b textbooks c hieroglyphics d flyers
- The garden is full _____ beautiful flowers.
 a from b of c with d at
- Mazen is known _____ his honesty and hard work.
 a of b for c in d with
- The company has a clear _____ for the future.
 a vision b flyer c machine d traffic
- Many Egyptian cities _____ on the coast of the Mediterranean sea.
 a run b lie c combine d honor
- The new project will _____ modern and traditional designs.
 a combine b reduce c exist d clear
- Luxor Temple is a magnificent ancient _____ in the city of Luxor.
 a airport b complex c university d furniture

2 Read and complete the sentences with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

symbols - columns - honor - grand - industrial

Aswan is a special tourist spot known for its Nubian culture. The city is filled with
 ① _____ monuments like Philae Temple and Abu Simbel. Visitors can see giant
 statues and ② _____ with ancient hieroglyphics. These ancient sites were built to
 ③ _____ the gods. They are ④ _____ of history and culture.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً :

1. is - ancient - complex - Luxor Temple - a magnificent

2. turn - a modern - Innovation - can - the desert - city - into

3. vision - progress - Egypt's - New Alamein - for - reflects

4. known - beautiful - is - hieroglyphics - The temple - for - its

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم اللاآتى :

1. New alamein lies on the beautiful northern coast

2. What can people do in luxor

5 Write an email of about SIXTY (60) words to your friend to tell him about "your visit to Alexandria Library"

اكتب بريد إلكتروني من (٦٠) كلمة لصديقك لتخبره عن زيارتك لمكتبة الإسكندرية :

Your name is Waleed and your email address is waleed2015@gmail.com.
Your friend name is Selim and his email address is selim2289@gmail.com.

reading hall – learn about

مجاب عنه آخر الوحدة

New Message		Cc Bcc	
To			
From			
Subject			
..... 			

Review

on Unit 4



infrastructure

البنية التحتية



determination

العزيمة / الإصرار



highway

الطريق السريع



innovation

ابتكار / تجديد



extend

يتمد / يوسع



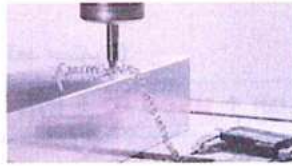
goods

بضائع / سلع



textile

نسيج / منسوجات



manufacture

تصنيع / يصنع



steel industry

صناعة الصلب



power source

مصدر طاقة



industrial

صناعي



self-reliant

مكتف ذاتياً

country

بلد / دولة

economy

اقتصاد

transportation system

نظام النقل / شبكة المواصلات

investment

استثمار

power supplies

إمدادات الطاقة

transport (ed)

ينقل

product

منتج

produce (d)

ينتج

coastal

ساحلي

contribute (d)

يساهم / يشارك

coast

ساحل

complex

مجمع

smart

ذكي / عصري

pharaoh

فرعون

Unit 4 Egypt on the Move

walkways
tourist spot
vision

ممرات المشاة (ممشى)
موقع سياحي
رؤية

hieroglyphics
culture
remarkable

اللغة الهيروغليفية
ثقافة
بارز

Language in Use

قواعد لغوية

Used to

اعتاد أن

Usage

استخدام

◎ We use "used to" to talk about:

1. Past habits (actions you did repeatedly in the past but don't do now).

◎ نستخدم (used to) للتعبير عن عادات في الماضي (أفعال كنت تقوم بها بشكل متكرر في الماضي ولكنك توقفت عنها الآن)

- I **used to** play football every weekend.

كنتُ أعتاد أن ألعب كرة القدم كل عطلة نهاية أسبوع. (الآن، لا ألعب).

2. Past states (situations or facts that were true in the past but are not true now).

◎ حالات في الماضي (أوضاع أو حقائق كانت صحيحة في الماضي ولكنها لم تعد كذلك الآن)

- In the past, transportation **used to** be slow.

في الماضي، كان النقل بطيئاً (الآن، أصبح النقل أسرع).

Form

التكوين

◎ Affirmative:

الإيجابيات

◎ اعتاد أن (عادة أو وضع في الماضي ولكن لم تعد مستمرة)

Subject + **used to** + inf. مصدر الفعل + الفاعل

- Students **used to** write on small boards.

- People **used to** depend mainly on farming and small local jobs.

- My father **used to** drink coffee.

Negative

النفي

◎ لم يعتد أن (للحديث عن أشياء لم تحدث في الماضي):

Subject + **didn't use to** + inf. مصدر الفعل + الفاعل

- Schools **didn't use to** have computers.

- In the past, most villages **didn't use to** have factories or machines.

- My father **didn't use to** drink tea.

Question

الأسئلة

◎ Yes/ No question السؤال بـ "هل"

◎ هل اعتاد أن (للسؤال عن وضع أو عادة في الماضي).

Did + subject + **use to** + inf. مصدر الفعل

- Did students **use to** study online?

- Did she **use to** practice the piano?

◎ Wh. question السؤال بأداة استفهام

◎ للسؤال عن وضع أو عادة في الماضي

Wh. word + did + subject + **use to** + inf. مصدر الفعل + أداة استفهام

- What did most Egyptians **use to** do in the past?

- Where did they **use to** live?



Answers to Paragraphs & emails

1

Lesson 1

New construction projects in Egypt

Egypt is building many new construction projects for a modern future. The biggest project is the New Administrative Capital. The country is also creating new roads, bridges, and fast trains to improve transportation. The goal of all this development is to create new jobs for people and to help the entire national economy grow stronger for everyone.

2

Lesson 2

Egypt's past and present industries

Egypt's economy has changed greatly. In the past, the country used to depend mainly on farming. People didn't use to have large factories, so the nation used to import many products. Today, Egypt produces its own goods. The country used to be less industrial, but now it has strong textile and steel industries, helping it become more self-reliant.

3

Lessons 4&5

Your visit to Alexandria Library

To: selim2289@gmail.com

From: waleed2015@gmail.com

Subject: A visit to Alexandria Library

Hi Selim,

How are you? I visited Alexandria Library two weeks ago. The building is magnificent, and the main reading hall is huge—it has millions of books. I learned so much about ancient Egyptian history there. It's a grand cultural area. We should meet up soon! I want to tell you everything about this amazing place.

Yours,

Waleed

Unit 4 Egypt on the Move

5

Test Al-Azhar

A famous place in Egypt

The Great Pyramids of Giza are the most famous tourist spot in Egypt. These giant structures were built thousands of years ago to honor the pharaohs. Visitors from around the world come to see their grand size. Nearby, the Great Sphinx stands as a mysterious guardian. This amazing site reflects the power and culture of ancient Egypt.

6

Test - Unit 4

A city you visited before

New Alamein City is a beautiful coastal city. It lies on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. It is a modern tourist spot with wide walkways and lively areas. The city combines luxury hotels with peaceful beaches. You can see many palm trees and sandy beaches. It also has shopping centers and a cultural area. This grand city is known for its smart design and attractive views, making it a wonderful place to visit.

1 Read and complete the dialog:

أقرأ وأكمل المحادثة :

economy - give - progress - manufactures - transportation - reflects

Bassem : Have you seen Egypt's new projects?

Yasmin : Yes! They show great determination and ①

Bassem : What are they building?

Yasmin : New bridges and modern ② systems.

Bassem : Why is this important?

Yasmin : It helps improve our ③

Bassem : Can you ④ an example?

Yasmin: The New Administrative Capital ⑤ Egypt's development.

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

أقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس :

1. People didn't (used) to write with pens and paper in the past.
2. They (don't) use to have a car when they lived in the village.
3. People plant trees to (rich) the soil.
4. How did students use to (learned) without computers and internet?
5. (Are) you use to play football when you were a child?

3 Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة :

1. The country invests heavily in projects like tunnels and roads. SB
 a infrastructure b textile c industry d power source
2. To is to produce goods using machines. SB
 a manufacture b clean c build d clear
3. Luxor is a major in Upper Egypt.
 a university b shopping center c tourist spot d power source
4. Many countries depend tourism for their economy.
 a in b at c with d on
5. Engineers will the road to reduce traffic. SB
 a large b enlarge c enlargen d larger

Unit 4 Egypt on the Move

6. Did engineers build new bridges and tunnels in the past?
a used to **b** not used **c** use to **d** not use
7. Hany speak English, but now he's fluent.
a not use to **b** didn't use to **c** didn't use **d** not used to
8. Drivers didn't use to GPS; they used to rely on paper maps.
a have **b** having **c** had **d** has
9. I swimming every weekend when I was on the coast.
a use to go **b** used to go **c** not use to go **d** not used to go
10. Where your family use to go for summer holidays?
a do **b** does **c** did **d** doing

4 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with a correct word:

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة:

1	widen	soften	bright	shorten	-----
2	manufacture	industrial	produce	contribute	-----
3	determination	innovation	extend	progress	-----
4	trade	tourism	industry	reduce	-----
5	peaceful	lively	imagine	attractive	-----

5 Read the following passage, then answer questions:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة:

Siwa Oasis is a peaceful and attractive place located in the Western Desert. It is known for its golden, sandy landscapes and thousands of palm trees. Unlike coastal cities, Siwa offers a different kind of beauty. The local community has a unique culture and used to depend mainly on farming dates and olives. In recent years, the government has worked to develop tourism here in order to create local jobs. New places and services have been built, but Siwa remains a calm place, full of natural wonder.

A) Write true (T) or false (F) :

	T	F
1. Siwa Oasis lies on the northern coast.	☐	☐
2. The local community used to depend on farming dates and olive.	☐	☐
3. It is known for its golden, sandy beaches and thousands of palm trees.	☐	☐

B) Choose the correct answer:

4. The government has worked to develop in Siwa in order to create local jobs.

a industry

b trade

c tourism

d products

5. Siwa remains a calm place, full of wonder.

a local

b natural

c industrial

d coastal

6 Write a short paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمسة جمل عن:

مجاها آخر الوحدة

A famous place in Egypt

Test on Unit 4

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ) :

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. Nelly visited the Pyramids of Giza two years ago.	☐	☐
2. She saw the grand Sphinx and the giant structures.	☐	☐
3. She bought a flyer about the hieroglyphics.	☐	☐
4. She felt tired after her visit to the Pyramids of Giza.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة :

- The government's new project shows its to improve the transportation system.
 a enclose b determination c textile d well-being
- Adel became more after he started working. He gets a lot of money.
 a helpless b weak c self-reliant d national
- They visit their grandparents every Friday when they were young.
 a use to b used to c are used to d using to
- your sister use to have long hair when she was younger?
 a Does b Did c Is d Has

3 Read and complete the sentences with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار :

growing - abroad - fabrics - high-quality - local

A modern factory can manufacture many different products. For example, the textile industry produces clothes and ①, while the steel industry makes strong metal for construction. These industrial goods are sold both in the country and ② This important work creates ③ jobs and helps contribute to a ④ economy, making the nation more self-reliant.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة :

The Citadel of Saladin is a giant historical complex in Cairo that reflects Egypt's rich history. It was built to protect the country and honor its power. The citadel includes magnificent mosques with large columns and grand designs. It is filled with visitors who come to see its attractive architecture and learn about the past. The government has worked to develop this area into a major tourist spot. This project is part of the national vision to turn historical sites into lively cultural areas that contribute to a growing economy.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1. The Citadel was originally built to protect the country and its power.

- ☐ a slow ☐ b honor ☐ c destroy ☐ d hide

2. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to

- ☐ a the mosque ☐ b the column ☐ c the design ☐ d the citadel

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What's the passage mainly about?

4. Why do visitors come to the citadel?

5. What does the government want to develop?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ و اكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس :

1. Workers used to (walking) to the factory every day.

2. Hadeer (not/ use) drink coffee, but now she drinks it every morning.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً :

1. narrow - crowded - In - roads - were - and - the past.

2. Egyptian - industry - food - products - manufactures - The - many

Unit 4 Egypt on the Move

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. What type of energy is Europe using now

2. the textile industry produces clothes

SB

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٦٠) كلمة عن:

مجاها عنه آخر الوحدة

A city you visited before

tourist spot - cultural area

Safe and smart & Transportation for Egypt's Future

مواصلات أمنه وذكية لمستقبل مصر

Learning Outcomes

Speaking

- Use transportation vocabulary in short role-plays and discussions.
يستخدم الطالب كلمات المواصلات العامة في دور حوارى وللمناقشات.
- Ask and answer questions about new and modern transportation systems.
يسأل الطالب ويجيب عن أسئلة عن أنظمة المواصلات الحديثة والجديدة.
- Talk about future transportation ideas and inventions.
يتحدث الطالب عن وسائل المواصلات المستقبلية والاختراعات.
- Use the First Conditional correctly to discuss possible future situations.
يستخدم الطالب الحالة الاولى من حالة (if) الشرطية ليناقد المواقف المستقبلية.

Listening

- Understand the main idea of short spoken texts about transportation and travel.
يفهم الطالب الفكرة الرئيسية من نص قصير يتم التحدث فيه عن وسائل المواصلات والسفر.
- Recognize key transportation vocabulary in listening activities.
يتعرف الطالب على أهم مرادفات المواصلات العامة في أنشطة مسموعة.
- Follow short spoken instructions related to travel, safety, and directions.
يتبع الطالب تعليمات قصيرة متعلقة بالسفر والامان والاتجاهات.
- Identify specific details such as payment methods, rules, or announcements in listening tasks.
يتعرف الطالب على تفاصيل معينة مثل طرق الدفع، القواعد أو التنويهات في مهمات سمعية.

Reading

- Identify main ideas and supporting details in short reading texts about transportation in Egypt and around the world.
يتعرف الطالب على الأفكار الرئيسية والتفاصيل الداعمة في نصوص مقروءة عن المواصلات في مصر وحول العالم.
- Recognize new transportation related vocabulary in context.
يتعرف الطالب على المفردات المتعلقة بالمواصلات الحديثة من خلال السياق.
- Make simple inferences about how transportation can change people's lives in the future.
يقوم الطالب بعمل استدلالات بسيطة عن أهمية المواصلات وكيف تغير حياة الناس في المستقبل.

Writing

- Write an email suggesting or describing future transportation solutions.
يكتب الطالب رسائل بريد الكتروني حيث يقترح أو يصف حلول مستقبلية للمواصلات.
- Write First Conditional sentences about transportation and the environment.
يكتب الطالب جمل مستخدما الحالة الشرطية الاولى عن المواصلات والبيئة.
- Create a short magazine article or brochure describing future transportation ideas.
يكتب الطالب مقال قصير في مجلة أو كتيب يصف أفكار النقل المستقبلية.

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



announcement

اعلان / تنوية / تنبيه



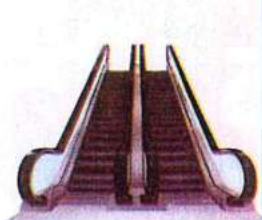
passengers

ركاب / مسافرين



ticket machine

آلة التذاكر



escalator

سلم كهربائي



elevator

مصعد



smart doors

أبواب ذكية



digital screen

شاشة رقمية



pay by card

الدفع عن طريق البطاقة

access

وصول

metro

المترو

staircase

سلم

cash

الدفع النقدي

LED

مصدر للضوء الكهربائي

electric

كهربائي



Other words

كلمات أخرى

showing

إظهار

movies

أفلام

platform

قاعدة / منبر

automatically

تلقائياً

route

ممر / طريق

stand back

خطوة للخلف

environment

البيئة

coins

عملات معدنية

phone

هاتف محمول

electricity

كهرباء

only

فقط

mostly

في الغالب / المعظم

prices

أسعار

technology

تكنولوجيا

station

محطة

online

عبر الانترنت

shopping centers

مراكز التسوق

Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

ride on the metro	يركب المترو	mostly about	غالباً عن
goes up / down	يصعد لأعلى / يهبط	route in Cairo	مسار الطريق في القاهرة
by card	عبر البطاقة	close automatically	يغلق تلقائياً
in English	بالإنجليزية	play music	يعزف موسيقى
only online	فقط عبر الانترنت	sell tickets	يبيع تذاكر
riding with us	الركوب معنا	inside the train	بداخل القطار

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ & P.P.	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	P.P. التصريف الثالث
open يفتح	opened	ride يركب	rode	ridden
close يغلق	closed	buy يشتري	bought	bought
save يوفر	sav ed	pay يدفع	paid	paid
stop يتوقف	stop ped	sell يبيع	sold	sold
play يلعب / يعزف	play ed	hear يسمع	heard	heard
use يستخدم	us ed			

Definitions

تعريفات

ticket machine	آلة التذاكر	A machine where you buy tickets
announcement	إعلان / تنوية	Speaking to give information to many people
digital screen	شاشة رقمية	An electric device for showing words or pictures
elevator	مصعد	A moving platform that goes up or down in a building
escalator	سلم كهربائي	A moving staircase

Study the following

- Welcome to the Cairo Metro.** أهلاً بكم في مترو القاهرة.
- The Giza metro is now faster and cleaner than before.** قطار الجيزة الآن أسرع وأنظف من ذي قبل.
- New trains have smart doors that open and close automatically.** القطارات الحديثة لديها أبواب ذكية تفتح وتغلق تلقائياً.
- Digital screens show the next station and the time.** الشاشات الرقمية تظهر المحطة التالية والوقت.

Unit 5 Safe and smart & Transportation for Egypt's Future

5 You can also hear clear announcements in Arabic and English.

يمكنك أيضاً سماع اعلانات او تنويهاات واضحة باللغتين العربية والإنجليزية.

6 You can pay by card, a phone, or cash.

يمكنك الدفع بالبطاقة، أو الهاتف، أو نقداً.

8 There are also elevators and escalators for easy access.

تتوفر أيضاً مصاعد وسلالم متحركة لسهولة الوصول.

9 The metro uses smart electricity.

يستخدم المترو الكهرباء الذكية.

10 The lights are LED and the trains save electricity when they stop.

الأضواء تعمل بتقنية الليد (ثنائي باعث للضوء) وتوفر القطارات الكهرباء عندما تتوقف.



استمع إلى النص:



Tape Script

Next Stop, Giza

"Good morning, passengers⁽¹⁾. Welcome to the Cairo Metro. This is Line 3⁽²⁾, the Green Line⁽³⁾. The next stop is Giza Station.

مرحباً بكم ايها الركاب في مترو القاهرة . هنا الخط الثالث، الخط الصديق للبيئة.
المحطة التالية هي محطة الجيزة.

The Giza Metro is now faster and cleaner than before. New trains have smart doors⁽⁴⁾ that open and close automatically⁽⁵⁾. Inside the train, there are big digital screens⁽⁶⁾. They show the next station and the time. You can also hear clear announcements⁽⁷⁾ in Arabic and English.

اصبح مترو الجيزة الآن اسرع وانظف عن ذي قبل. القطارات الحديثة لديها أبواب ذكية تفتح وتغلق
أوتوماتيكياً بداخل القطار يوجد شاشات رقمية تظهر المحطة التالية والوقت . يمكنك الاستماع الي
اعلانات او تنويهاات واضحة باللغة العربية والإنجليزية.

At Giza Station, there are new ticket machines. You can pay by card⁽⁸⁾, a phone, or cash. There are also elevators⁽⁹⁾ and escalators⁽¹⁰⁾ for easy access⁽¹¹⁾.

يوجد آلات للتذاكر في محطة مترو الجيزة.. يمكنك الدفع بالبطاقة او الهاتف او الدفع النقدي. يوجد
ايضا مصاعد وسلالم كهربائية لسهولة الوصول.

The metro uses smart electricity. The lights are LED⁽¹²⁾ and the trains save electricity when they stop. This makes the metro better for the environment. Please stand back from the doors. The next stop is Giza. Thank you for riding with us."

يستخدم المترو كهرباء ذكية . تعمل الأضواء بتقنية الليد (ثنائي باعث للضوء) وتوفر القطارات الكهرباء عندما تتوقف. هذا يجعل
المترو افضل للبيئة. من فضلك قف خطوة للخلف بعيد عن الابواب. المحطة التالية الجيزة. شكراً لك علي الركوب معنا.



Arabic Meaning

- ١- ركاب
- ٢- الخط الثالث
- ٣- خط صديق للبيئة
- ٤- أبواب ذكية
- ٥- تلقائياً
- ٦- شاشات ذكية
- ٧- تنبيهات
- ٨- يدفع باكرات
- ٩- مصاعد
- ١٠- سلالم كهربائية
- ١١- وصول
- ١٢- ليد

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. doors open and close automatically. SB
 a Moving b Smart c Fast d Slow
2. The metro is better for the environment because it saves SB
 a money b time c electricity d water
3. People can buy tickets from the SB
 a smart doors b ticket machine c escalator d screen
4. Digital is an electric device for showing words or pictures.
 a mouse b screen c card d elevator
5. I don't have any cash , can I pay by?
 a card b cap c coins d bills
6. I use the to get to the 5th floor.
 a car b elevator c bike d metro
7. I use the to get to stores in the shopping mall.
 a lights b machine c escalator d digital screen
8. The next is Giza station.
 a places b thing c here d stop
9. Please stand from the doors because they will open automatically.
 a front b beside c back d on

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

ship - station - faster - metro - smart

Good morning, passengers. Welcome to the Cairo ① This is Line 3, the Green Line. The next stop is Giza ② The Giza metro is now ③ and cleaner than before. New trains have ④ doors that open and close automatically.

3 Read the text and answer the following questions:

أقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة التالية :

The Giza Metro is now faster and cleaner than before. New trains have smart doors that open and close automatically. Inside the train, there are big digital screens. They show the next station and the time. You can also hear clear announcements in Arabic and English.

At Giza Station, there are new ticket machines. You can pay by card, a phone, or cash. There are also elevators and escalators for easy access.

A. Choose the correct answer:

- The word easy is opposite to
☐ a simple ☐ b nice ☐ c hard ☐ d good
- The doors open and close
☐ a easily ☐ b automatically ☐ c difficult ☐ d badly

B. Answer the following questions:

- How can we pay at the metro?

- What makes the metro better for the environment?

- Why Giza metro is cleaner and faster then before?

4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً :

- for - Thank - riding - you - us - with.

- can - card - by - or - You - pay - cash.

- for - The announcement - is - line 3.

- digital - big - There - screens - are.

- is - staircase - An escalator - a moving.

SB

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يأتي :

- what is the announcement mostly about -----
- the train saves electricity when they stop -----

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



transportation

وسائل المواصلات



monorail

المونوريل / القطار احادي القضبان

systems

انظمة

single track

مسار / ممر منفرد

connect

يربط

exciting

مثير

above

أعلي

block

يعيق / يمنع



Other words

كلمات أخرى

smoke

دخان

stop

يتوقف

smartly

بذكاء

allowed

مسموح

petrol

بنزين / وقود

safe

أمن

stand

يقف

properly

تماما / بشكل صحيح

electric buses

الاتوبيسات الكهربائية

improve

يتحسن

seats

مقاعد



Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعابير وأحرف جر وعبارات

runs on electricity

يعمل بالكهرباء

above the ground

فوق الارض

into the future

إلى المستقبل

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ & P.P.	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	P.P. التصريف الثالث
travel يسافر	traveled	grow يكبر	grew	grown
connect يربط	connected	run يجري	ran	run
change يغير	changed	become يصبح	became	become
continue يكمل	continued	make يصنع / يجعل	made	made
block يعيق	blocked			
follow يتبع	followed			

Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 Able to = can قادر علي

- The passengers are **able to** pay by card..

2 Run on = move يتحرك علي

- The train **runs on** a single track.

Study the following

- 1 Egypt is changing the way people travel. غيرت مصر الطريقة التي يسافر بها الناس.
- 2 The cities will become faster if new transportations systems continue to grow. ستكون المدن الجديدة أسرع اذا استمرت أنظمة المواصلات الحديثة في النمو والتطور.
- 3 The monorail is a train that moves on a single track above the ground. المونوريل هو عبارة عن قطار احادي الاتجاه موجود فوق الارض.
- 4 At each station , passengers will find tickets machines. سيجد الركاب آلات للتذاكر بداخل كل محطة.
- 5 Some stations have elevators and escalators. بعض المحطات بها مصاعد و سلالم كهربائية.
- 6 The bus has smart doors and bright LED lights. الاتوبيس به أبواب ذكية وأضواء ساطعة بتقنية الليد.
- 7 The electric bus will help the environment because it runs on electricity and makes no smoke. سيساعد الاتوبيس الكهربى البيئة لانه يعمل بالكهرباء ولا يصدر أي دخان.
- 8 With the new monorail and electric buses, Egypt will move smartly into the future. ستتحج مصر بذكاء نحو المستقبل مع المونوريل الجديد والاتوبيسات الكهربائية.



Tape Script

Egypt's New Monorail⁽¹⁾ and Electric Buses⁽²⁾

Egypt is changing the way people travel. If these new transportation **systems**⁽³⁾ continue to grow in Cairo and Giza, the cities will become faster, cleaner, and smarter.

غيرت مصر الطريقة التي يسافر بها الناس. اذا واصلت أنظمة المواصلات الحديثة النمو في القاهرة والجيزة ، سوف تصبح المدن أسرع، أنظف وأكثر ذكاء.

One exciting project is the monorail, a train that runs on a single **track**⁽⁴⁾ above the ground. It will connect important places quickly. At each station, passengers will find ticket machines, digital screens, and announcements. Some stations also have elevators and escalators, so people will travel more easily.



واحد من المشاريع المثيرة للاهتمام هو المونوريل، هو عبارة عن قطار احادي الاتجاه فوق الارض. سوف يربط الاماكن المهمة مع بعضها بسرعة. سيجد الركاب آلات للتذاكر وشاشات رقمية واعلانات. بعض المحطات بها أيضا مصاعد وسلالم كهربائية لذا سوف تسافر الناس بسهولة أكثر.

Passengers must buy a ticket and listen to announcements.

They mustn't **block**⁽⁵⁾ the smart doors. The electric bus will help the environment because it runs on electricity and makes no **smoke**⁽⁶⁾. Passengers will be able to pay by card or phone. The bus has smart doors and bright LED lights.

Arabic Meaning

- ١- قطار احادي القضبان
- ٢- اتوبيس كهربائي
- ٣- أنظمة المواصلات
- ٤- مسار
- ٥- يعيق
- ٦- دخان
- ٧- آمن
- ٨- بشكل ملائم
- ٩- قواعد

يجب ان يشتري الركاب تذاكر ويستمعوا الي التنويهات. يجب الا يعيقوا الابواب الذكية. سوف

يساعد الاتوبيس الكهربائي البيئة لانه يعمل بالكهرباء ولا يصدر اي دخان. سيتمكن الركاب من الدفع بالبطاقة او الهاتف. الاتوبيس به ابواب ذكية ومصابيح موفرة للطاقة

People will stay **safe**⁽⁷⁾ if they stand or sit **properly**⁽⁸⁾, but they won't follow the **rules**⁽⁹⁾ if they eat or drink on the bus.

سيكون الناس آمنين إذا وقفوا أو جلسوا بشكل صحيح ، و لكنهم لن يتبعوا القواعد اذا قاموا بالاكل او الشرب داخل الاتوبيس.

With the monorail and electric buses, Egypt will move smartly into the future.

مع القطار احادي المسار والاتوبيسات الكهربائية ، ستتحرك مصر بذكاء نحو المستقبل .

Language in Use

قواعد لغوية

First Conditional (Future Possibilities) الحالة الشرطية الأولى

1 Usage: الاستخدام

- We use the First Conditional to talk about possible situations in the future.

● نستخدم حالة If الشرطية الأولى للتحدث عن المواقف المحتمل حدوثها في المستقبل.

2 Form: التكوين

If + present simple, + فاعل + will/ won't = will not + inf. الفعل في المصدر

فاعل + will/won't + inf. مصدر الفعل, if + present simple

● يمكن أن تأتي (if) وسط الجملة لكن يجب أن تفصل بين الجملتين بفاصلة (,).

- If you take the monorail, you will arrive faster.
- You will arrive faster, if you take the monorail.

Usage: الاستخدام

● نستخدم الحالة الأولى للجملة الشرطية للتعبير عن حدث يشترط حدوثه حدث آخر.

- If we use electric buses, the environment will be cleaner.
- If passengers forget their cards, they will buy a ticket at the machine.

Question: السؤال

Will + فاعل + inf. + if + present simple?

- Will you stay home if it rains?
- Yes, I will. No, I will not.

The present simple tense زمن المضارع البسيط

1 Usage: الاستخدام

● نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عادات وافعال روتينية وحقائق علمية.

2 Form: التكوين

I / We / You / They + inf. مصدر الفعل

He / She / It + verb. + (s-es-ies)

- He usually goes to school by bus.
- I visit my cousins every week.

3 Negative: النفي

I / We / You / They + don't / never + inf.

He / She / It + inf. + doesn't + inf. / never + verb. + (s-es-ies)

- We **don't** go to school on Friday.
- He **doesn't** live in a city.

4 Questions: السؤال

Do + I / we / your / they + inf.?

- Do you like pizza?
- Yes, I do. ⊙ إجابة مثبتة - No, I don't. ⊙ إجابة منفية

Does + he / she / it + inf.?

- Does Ahmed see his friends on weekends?
- Yes, he does. ⊙ إجابة مثبتة - No, he doesn't. ⊙ إجابة منفية

Checkup Exercise (✓)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. If he gets a present, he happy.

- a will b are c was d will be

2. Fatma go to school, if she is ill.

- a won't b aren't c will d could

3. Will you have a rest, if you tired.

- a is b are c am d was

4. I'll help you, if I free.

- a am b is c are d were

5. What will you, if you meet Mo Salah?

- a did b does c do d doing

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

1. Egypt has new transportation systems , so the way people travel is
☐ a changing ☐ b completing ☐ c following ☐ d running
2. The is a train that runs on a single track.
☐ a plane ☐ b ship ☐ c bike ☐ d monorail
3. At the station , you will find for old people to move.
☐ a elevators ☐ b cars ☐ c screens ☐ d digitals
4. Passengers mustn't the smart doors.
☐ a move ☐ b run ☐ c block ☐ d open
5. You must the rules at the train.
☐ a follow ☐ b move ☐ c find ☐ d pay
6. People will stay safe if they or sit properly.
☐ a stand ☐ b won't stand ☐ c standing ☐ d stood
7. Passengers the rules if they eat or drink on the bus.
☐ a will follow ☐ b won't follow ☐ c follows ☐ d followed
8. If you the monorail, you will arrive faster.
☐ a took ☐ b takes ☐ c take ☐ d taking
9. we use electric buses , the environment will be cleaner.
☐ a But ☐ b If ☐ c Both ☐ d Which
10. If passengers forget their cards , they a ticket at the machine.
☐ a buys ☐ b bought ☐ c buying ☐ d will buy
11. If you stand behind the yellow line , you will safe.
☐ a was ☐ b is ☐ c been ☐ d be
12. If we milk, our teeth will be stronger.
☐ a drank ☐ b drinks ☐ c drink ☐ d drinking
13. If I have a bike, I go to school on foot.
☐ a will ☐ b won't ☐ c am ☐ d did
14. If we build new cities, there will new jobs.
☐ a been ☐ b being ☐ c be ☐ d is

15. If it sunny, we will go to the beach.

a was

b will be

c are

d is

16. We if we train every day

a will win

b win

c won

d wins

2 Read and complete the sentences with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

smoke - block - electricity - card - listen

Passengers must buy a ticket and ① to announcements. They mustn't ② the smart doors. The electric bus will help the environment because it runs on ③ and makes no smoke. Passengers will be able to pay by ④ or phone. The bus has smart doors and bright LED lights.

3 Read the text and answer the following questions:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

Egypt is changing the way people travel. If these new transportation systems continue to grow in Cairo and Giza, the cities will become faster, cleaner, and smarter.

One exciting project is the monorail, a train that runs on a single track above the ground. It will connect important places quickly. At each station, passengers will find ticket machines, digital screens, and announcements. Some stations also have elevators and escalators, so people will travel more easily.

A. Choose the correct answer:

1. The monorail moves The ground.

a in

b behind

c above

d across

2. The word connect means

a cute

b take

c cut

d link

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the text?

.....

4. What things you can find at any station?

.....

Unit 5 Safe and smart & Transportation for Egypt's Future

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

رتب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة :

1. travel - is - the way - **Egypt** - changing - people

2. a train - is - **The monorail** - runs - a single - on - track.

3. a ticket - must - **Passengers** - buy.

4. smart - **The bus** - doors - has .

5. will - by - pay - **Passengers** - to - be - able - card.

5 Read and write the correct form of the word (words) in bracket:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس :

1. If we use the electric bus, the air (**be**) cleaner. SB
2. If the passenger (**listen**) to the announcement, he will know the next stop. SB
3. If passengers block the smart doors, the train (**not start**). SB
4. If Egypt builds more monorails, people (**travel**) faster. SB
5. If your dad (**pay**) by card, he will save time. SB
6. If she (**didn't**) run fast, she will not win the race.
7. We (**won't**) be healthy, if we do exercise.
8. If Ali (**study**) hard, he will succeed.
9. Retaj won't be hungry, if she (**eat**) her lunch.
10. They will buy a car, if they (**has**) money.

11. What _____ (**happen**), if he wastes his time?

12. Will Mrs Fatma _____ (is) angry, if Karma forgets her homework.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يأتي:

1. how is the transportation different from old buses and trains

2. egypt will move smartly into the future

7 Write a paragraph of **SIXTY (60)** words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٦٠) كلمة عن:

مَجَاب عَنْهُ آخِر الْوَحْدَةِ

New Monorail and electric buses

cleaner - pay by card

★ Cleaner transportation. Cleaner planet

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



eco- friendly

صديق للبيئة



pollution

التلوث



self-driving

ذاتي القيادة



renewable energy

طاقته متجددة

air pollution

تلوث الهواء

vehicles

المركبات



Other words

كلمات أخرى

harm	يؤذي / يضر	fresh	نقى
protect	يحمي	cameras	كاميرات
fuel	وقود	slow down	يهدئ السرعة
noise	ضوضاء	without	بدون
easily	بسهولة	accident	حادثة
diesel	سولار	countries	بلاد
together	معاً / سوياً	natural sources	مصادر طبيعية
Earth	كوكب الأرض	better	أفضل
environment	البيئة	generation	جيل
wind	رياح	planet	كوكب
petrol	بنزين		



Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعابير وأحرف جر وعبارات

less fuel	وقود أقل	comes from	يأتي من
without a driver	بدون سائق	reduce pollution	يقلل التلوث

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ & P.P.	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	P.P. التصريف الثالث
harm يؤذي	harmed	run out	ran out	run out
avoid يتجنب	avoided	ينفذ / ينتهي	chose	chosen
reduce يقلل	reduced	يختار		
power يشغل	powered			

Definitions تعريفات

eco-friendly صديق للبيئة	don't harm the environment
self-driving cars سيارات ذاتية القيادة	cars that can move without a human driver

Study the following

- 1 People will travel in smarter and cleaner ways. سيسافر الناس بطرق أذكى وأنظف.
- 2 Many new vehicles are becoming eco-friendly, which means they do not harm the environment. أصبحت مركبات كثيرة صديقة للبيئة أي أنها لا تؤذي البيئة.
- 3 These cars use cameras and computers to move safely on the road without a driver. هذه السيارات تستخدم كاميرات وأجهزة الكمبيوتر لكي تتحرك بأمان على الطريق بدون قائد.
- 4 Many countries are also using renewable energy to power their transportation. تستخدم أيضا بلاد كثيرة الطاقة المتجددة لكي تشغل وسائل المواصلات لديهم.
- 5 We can help reduce pollution and protect Earth for future generations. يمكننا أن نساعد في تقليل التلوث ونحمي كوكب الأرض للأجيال المستقبلية.

Read the dialog and act it out:

اقرأ الحوار وقم بتمثيله:

Tape Script

استمع إلى النص:



In the future, people will travel in smarter and cleaner ways. Many new vehicles⁽¹⁾ are becoming eco-friendly⁽²⁾, which means they do not harm⁽³⁾ the environment. For example, electric buses⁽⁴⁾ and trains use less fuel⁽⁵⁾ and make less noise. This helps reduce pollution⁽⁶⁾ in cities and keeps the air fresh⁽⁷⁾ for everyone.

سيتمكن الناس بطرق أكثر ذكاءً ونظافة في المستقبل. أصبحت العديد من المركبات الجديدة صديقة للبيئة، مما يعني أنها لا تضر بالبيئة. على سبيل المثال، تستخدم الأتوبيسات والقطارات الكهربائية وقوداً أقل وتحدث ضوضاء أقل. وهذا يساعد في تقليل التلوث في المدن والحفاظ على الهواء نظيفاً للجميع.

Arabic Meaning

- 1- مركبات
- 2- صديق للبيئة
- 3- يضر
- 4- أتوبيسات كهربائية
- 5- وقود
- 6- يقلل التلوث
- 7- هواء نقي

Unit 5 Safe and smart & Transportation for Egypt's Future

Some cars today are even self-driving. These cars use cameras and computers to move **safely**⁽⁸⁾ on the road without a driver. They can stop at red lights, slow down for people on foot, and **avoid accidents**⁽⁹⁾. In the future, self-driving cars may help people travel more safely and easily.

أصبحت بعض السيارات اليوم ذاتية القيادة. تستخدم هذه السيارات كاميرات وأجهزة حاسوب للتنقل بأمان على الطريق دون الحاجة إلى سائق. يمكنها التوقف عند إشارات المرور الحمراء، وتبطئ سرعتها للمشاة، وتتجنب الحوادث. في المستقبل، قد تساعد السيارات ذاتية القيادة الناس على التنقل بشكل أكثر أماناً وسهولة.

Arabic Meaning

- ٨- بامان
- ٩- يتجنب الحوادث
- ١٠- الطاقة المتجددة
- ١١- مصادر طبيعية
- ١٢- لا ينفذ أبداً
- ١٣- بنزين
- ١٤- سولار
- ١٥- أجيال

Many countries are also using **renewable energy**⁽¹⁰⁾ to power their transportation.

Renewable energy comes from **natural sources**⁽¹¹⁾ like the sun, wind, and water. It **never runs out**⁽¹²⁾ and is better for our planet than **petrol**⁽¹³⁾ or **diesel**⁽¹⁴⁾.

تستخدم العديد من البلدان أيضاً الطاقة المتجددة لتشغيل وسائل النقل الخاصة بها. تأتي الطاقة المتجددة من مصادر طبيعية مثل الشمس والرياح والمياه. وهي لا تنفذ أبداً وأفضل لكونها من البنزين أو السولار.

If everyone chooses eco-friendly transportation and uses renewable energy, the world will become a cleaner and safer place. Together, we can help reduce pollution and protect Earth for future **generation**⁽¹⁵⁾.

إذا اختار الجميع وسائل نقل صديقة للبيئة واستخدموا الطاقة المتجددة، فسيصبح العالم مكاناً أنظف وأكثر أماناً. يمكننا معاً المساعدة في تقليل التلوث وحماية الأرض للأجيال القادمة.



Pronunciation

1- triphthongs اصوات العلة الثلاثية

- Triphthong is a vowel sound that combines three vowel sounds together in one syllable

● صوت العلة الثلاثي هي صوت متحرك يدمج ثلاثة اصوات متحركة معا في مقطع واحد

/aʊə/	/eɪə/
تنطق مثل ow-er	تنطق مثل ay-er
hour / ساعة (٦٠ دقيقة) / our / ملكنا / flower / وردة	layer / طبقة / player / لاعب / mayor / عمدة / slayer / قاتل
power / دوش / shower / قوة / يشغل / tower / برج / sour / حامض / لاذع	

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Cars that don't harm the environment are called SB
☐ a polluted ☐ b eco-friendly ☐ c friendly ☐ d harmful
2. Solar and wind power are examples of SB
☐ a renewable energy ☐ b non-renewable energy
☐ c self-driving ☐ d computers
3. cars can move without a human driver. SB
☐ a Self-driving ☐ b Automatic ☐ c Energy ☐ d Broken
4. Reducing helps keep the air clean. SB
☐ a energy ☐ b bikes ☐ c water ☐ d pollution
5. Using clean transportation makes the world for everyone. SB
☐ a worse ☐ b safer ☐ c slower ☐ d noisier
6. Electric buses and trains use less and make less noise.
☐ a electric ☐ b fuel ☐ c goal ☐ d hour
7. Self-driving cars use cameras to move
☐ a dangerously ☐ b softly ☐ c safely ☐ d sadly
8. Self-driving cars can avoid
☐ a players ☐ b accidents ☐ c solutions ☐ d tools
9. Renewable energy comes from sources.
☐ a artificial ☐ b nature ☐ c natural ☐ d factor
10. Self-driving cars can move without a
☐ a diver ☐ b driver ☐ c nurse ☐ d vet
11. We can help pollution.
☐ a increase ☐ b connect ☐ c reduce ☐ d complete

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

pollution - eco-friendly - renewable - self-driving - safer

We must take care of the environment. Using ① energy is good for the environment. It can help reduce ② We can also use ③ cars because they don't harm the environment. This can help make the world ④ for everyone.

Unit 5 Safe and smart & Transportation for Egypt's Future

3 Read the text and answer the following questions:

أقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

Some cars today are even self-driving. These cars use cameras and computers to move safely on the road without a driver. They can stop at red lights, slow down for people on foot, and avoid accidents. In the future, self-driving cars may help people travel more safely and easily. Many countries are also using renewable energy to power their transportation. Renewable energy comes from natural sources like the sun, wind, and water. It never runs out and is better for our planet than petrol or diesel. If everyone chooses eco-friendly transportation and uses renewable energy, the world will become a cleaner and safer place.

A. Choose the correct answer:

1. Some cars use to move safely on the road.
☐ a phones ☐ b cameras ☐ c screens ☐ d videos
2. Run out means.....
☐ a endless ☐ b renewable ☐ c complete ☐ d finish

A. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the text?
4. Why is renewable energy good for our planet?
5. What does the underlined pronoun it refer to ?

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. cars - harm - don't - Eco-friendly - the environment.
.....

2. keep - Electric - the air - fresh - buses.
.....

3. from - comes - Renewable - sources - natural - energy.
.....

4. accidents - can - Self-driving - avoid - cars.
.....

5. protect - Earth - We - can - generations - future - for.
.....

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. how do self-driving cars move safely -----
2. we can help reduce pollution -----

6 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٦٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

Self-driving cars

safely - cameras

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المضردات:



vision
green
quieter

رؤية
صديق للبيئة
اهدي

future
idea

المستقبل
فكرة



Other words

كلمات أخرى

underground
comfortably
mobile apps
digital signs
travelers
seat belt
look like
brochure

تحت الأرض
بشكل مريح
تطبيقات الهاتف المحمول
لافتات رقمية
مسافرين
حزام الأمان
يشبه
كتيب ارشادي

minutes
technology
just
smart cards
stations
both
crowded

دقائق
تكنولوجيا
حالا/ مجرد
بطاقات ذكية
محطات
كلاهما
مزدحم



Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعابير وأحرف جر وعبارات

less pollution
pay for
best wishes
in a creative way

تلوث أقل
يدفع لـ / مقابل
مع أطيب الأمنيات
بشكل إبداعي

in both
in line
in English
do well

في كلاهما
في طابور
باللغة الانجليزية
يحسن صنعا



Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

imagine يتخيل
carry يحمل
wait ينتظر
present يقدم
create يخلق
hope يأمل
connect يربط

Past ماضٍ & P.P.

imagined
carried
waited
presented
created
hoped
connected

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

wear يرتدي
tell يخبر
pay يدفع

Past ماضٍ

wore
told
paid

P.P. التصريف الثالث

worn
told
paid

Read the email



استمع إلى النص:



Tape Script

To: friend@example.com

Subject: My Vision for Egypt's Future Transport

موضوع واضح Clear Subject

رؤيتي لمواصلات مصر المستقبلية

Dear Nada, عزيزتي ندي

تحية Greeting

How are you? I hope you're doing well. كيف حالك؟ أتمنى أن تكوني بخير.

افتتاح ودود Friendly Opening

I want to tell you about my idea for Egypt's future transportation.

أريد أن أخبرك عن فكرتي عن مواصلات مصر المستقبلية

مقدمة الموضوع Topic Introduction

In the future, I imagine Egypt will have faster, cleaner, and smarter ways to travel. أتخيل أن مصر في المستقبل سيكون لديها طرق أسرع وأكثر نظافة وذكاءً للسفر.

الفكرة الرئيسية Main Idea

"There will be underground electric trains that connect cities in just minutes and self-driving buses that carry passengers safely and comfortably".

"These vehicles will use renewable energy, so the air will be cleaner and the streets quieter, with much less pollution".

"Technology will also make travel easier".

"Passengers will pay for tickets using smart cards or mobile apps".

تفاصيل Details

"The stations will have digital signs in both English and Arabic to help travelers.

ستكون هناك قطارات كهربائية تحت الأرض تربط المدن خلال دقائق فقط، وأتوبيسات ذاتية القيادة تنقل الركاب بأمان وراحة".

"ستستخدم هذه المركبات الطاقة المتجددة، لذا سيكون الهواء أكثر نقاءاً والشوارع أكثر هدوءاً، مع تلوث أقل بكثير".

"كما ستجعل التكنولوجيا السفر أسهل".

"سي دفع الركاب ثمن التذاكر باستخدام البطاقات الذكية أو تطبيقات الهاتف المحمول".

"وستحتوي المحطات على لافتات رقمية باللغتين الإنجليزية والعربية لمساعدة المسافرين".

People must wait in line, mustn't block the doors, and must wear seat belts in cars". يجب أن ينتظر الناس في طابور لا ينبغي عليهم أن يعيقوا الأبواب ويجب أن يرتدوا أحزمة الأمان في السيارات.

"If Egypt builds more eco-friendly transportation, the streets will be less crowded and the environment will be better for everyone".

إذا قامت مصر ببناء المزيد من وسائل النقل الصديقة للبيئة، فستصبح الشوارع أقل ازدحاماً وستكون البيئة أفضل للجميع.

I'm really excited about this smart a and green future!

رأي شخصي Personal Opinion

أنا حقاً متحمسة بشأن المواصلات الذكية والصديقة للبيئة

Best wishes

مع أطيب تمنياتي

خاتمة Closing

Dina دينا

التوقيع Signature

Transportation Magazine "Future Egypt"

مجلة المواصلات «مستقبل مصر»

Create a brochure about transportation in the year 2050. Imagine what travel in Egypt will look like in the future, and present your ideas in a creative way.

أنشئ كتيباً عن النقل في عام ٢٠٥٠. تخيل كيف سيكون السفر في مصر مستقبلاً، وعرض أفكارك بطريقة إبداعية.

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Egypt has a clear for the future.
☐ a revision ☐ b vision ☐ c television ☐ d mobile
- Electric trains will the cities in just minutes.
☐ a destroy ☐ b pay ☐ c connect ☐ d drop
- can use many transportations safely and comfortably.
☐ a Passengers ☐ b Trips ☐ c Streets ☐ d Monorails
- This vehicle uses energy, so the air is cleaner.
☐ a harmful ☐ b bad ☐ c renewable ☐ d non-renewable
- You mustn't the doors of the metro.
☐ a block ☐ b use ☐ c see ☐ d go through
- There will be underground trains.
☐ a electricity ☐ b electric ☐ c wind ☐ d water
- Technology will make travel.....
☐ a difficult ☐ b hard ☐ c easier ☐ d smooth

2 Read and complete the sentences with the words from the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

connect - faster - electric - green - yellow

Technology has helped us in many fields. It helps us make smart and ① transportation. This transportation is ②, cleaner, and smarter. There will be underground ③ trains that ④ cities in just minutes.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. crowded - less - The streets - will - be.

2. digital - have - signs - The stations - will.

3. doing - you're - I - hope - well.

4. will - travel - easier - Technology - make.

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. how do you go to school every day

2. I imagine egypt will have faster transportations

5 Write an email of 60 words to your friend to describe your vision for Egypt's future transportation.

اكتب بريد إلكتروني من (٦٠) كلمة عن:

Your name is Alaa and your email address is alaa-87@gmail.com Your friend's name is Mona and her email address is mona99@gmail.com.

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

New Message		-	/	x
To	.....	Cc Bcc		
From	.....			
Subject	.....			
..... 				

Review



on Unit 5



announcement

اعلان



passengers

ركاب / مسافرين



ticket machine

آلة التذاكر



escalator

سلم كهربائي



elevator

مصعد



smart doors

أبواب ذكية



digital screen

شاشة رقمية



pay by card

الدفع عن طريق البطاقة



transportation

وسائل المواصلات



monorail

المونوريل / القطار احادي القضبان



eco- friendly

صديق للبيئة



pollution

التلوث



self-driving

ذاتي القيادة



renewable energy

طاقه متجددة

Language in Use

قواعد لغوية

First Conditional (Future Possibilities) الحالة الشرطية الاولى

1 Usage: الاستخدام

نستخدم حالة If الشرطية الاولى للتحدث عن المواقف المحتمل حدوثها في المستقبل.

2 Form: التكوين

If + present simple, + فاعل + will/ won't = will not + inf. الفعل في المصدر

if + present simple, مصدر الفعل + will/won't + فاعل

⊙ يمكن أن تأتي (if) وسط الجملة لكن يجب أن تفصل بين الجملتين بفاصلة (,).

- If you **take** the monorail, you **will arrive** faster.

Usage: الاستخدام

⊙ تستخدم الحالة الأولى للجملة الشرطية للتعبير عن حدث يشترط حدوثه حدث آخر.

- If we **use** electric buses, the environment **will be** cleaner.

Question: السؤال

Will + فاعل + inf. + if + present simple?

- **Will** you stay home if it rains?

Yes, I **will**. No, I **will** not.

The present simple tense

زمن المضارع البسيط

1 Usage: الاستخدام

⊙ نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عادات وأفعال روتينية وحقائق علمية.

2 Form: التكوين

I / We / You / They + inf. مصدر الفعل

He / She / It + verb. + (s-es-ies)

- He usually **goes** to school by bus.
- I **visit** my cousins every week.

3 Negative: النفي

I / We / You / They + don't / never + inf.

He / She / It + inf. + doesn't + inf. / never + verb. + (s-es-ies)

- We **don't go** to school on Friday.
- He **doesn't live** in a city.

4 Questions: السؤال

Do + I / we / your / they + inf.?

- Do you like pizza?

- Yes, I do.

⊙ إجابة مثبتة:

- No, I don't.

⊙ إجابة منفية:

Does + he / she / it + inf.?

- Does Ahmed see his friends on weekends?

- Yes, he does.

⊙ إجابة مثبتة:

- No, he doesn't.

⊙ إجابة منفية:



Answers to Paragraphs

1

Lesson 2

New Monorail and electric buses

Egypt is changing the way people travel. If these new transportation systems continue to grow in Cairo and Giza, the cities will become faster, cleaner, and smarter. The monorail is a train that runs on a single track above the ground. It will connect important places quickly. At each station, passengers will find ticket machines, digital screens, and announcements.

2

Lesson 3

Self-driving cars

Some cars today are even self-driving. These cars use cameras and computers to move safely on the road without a driver. They can stop at red lights, slow down for people on foot, and avoid accidents. In the future, self-driving cars may help people travel more safely and easily. Many countries are also using renewable energy to power their transportation.

3

Lessons 4&5

A visit to Alexandria Library

To: mona99@gmail.com

From: alaa-87@gmail.com

Subject: A visit to Alexandria Library

Dear Mona ,

How are you? I hope you're doing well.

I want to tell you about transport in Egypt. Egypt will have amazing transport in each place. It has monorail which connects every place together for people to reach any place in few minutes. Egypt also has electric buses which are amazing. They don't harm the environment. Egypt also has the metro which is smart and has amazing digital screens and ticket machines. I'm really excited about the smart transport in Egypt.

Best wishes.

Alaa

4

Test Al-Azhar

Egypt's future transport

Egypt will have amazing transportation. There will be cleaner vehicles. We will use the mobile apps to pay for tickets instead of cash. People will travel in a comfortable electric buses or underground trains. We have eco-friendly forms of transportation which don't harm the environment.

5

Test

Giza Station

The Giza Metro is now faster and cleaner than ever. The new trains have smart doors that open and close automatically . Inside the carriages, large digital screens show the next station and the time. Passengers also can hear clear announcements in both Arabic and English.

At Giza Station, new ticket machines have been installed, offering flexible payment options: you can pay by card, a mobile phone, or cash. For easy access, the station has with elevators and escalators.

Al-Azhar Test

امتحان خاص بالأزهر الشريف

1 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة،

trade-cash - travel - clean - card - single

Omar and Alaa are talking about transportation in Egypt .

Omar : Egypt is changing the way people ① -----

Alaa : Egypt has the monorail , Do you know it ?

Omar : Yes, it is a train that moves in a ② ----- track.

Alaa : Do you know the electric bus?

Omar : Yes, it keeps the environment ③ -----

Alaa : I can pay be ④ ----- or

⑤ -----

Unit 5 Safe and smart & Transportation for Egypt's Future

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات التي بين الأقواس:

1. If Ahmed (**lose**) his keys, he won't be able to open the doors.
2. If I have enough money, I (**buy**) a phone.
3. If Fatma wakes up late, She (**won't**) miss the bus.
4. If he (**invited**) me, I will come to the party.
5. Will you stay home if it (**rained**)?

3 Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Solar and wind power are examples of energy.
a renewable **b** nonrenewable **c** helpless **d** ending
2. When we use renewable energy, the world will become a place.
a cleaner **b** worse **c** wrong **d** dirtier
3. Eco-Friendly cars can help pollution.
a increase **b** connect **c** reduce **d** complete
4. Electric buses and trains use less and make less noise.
a electric **b** fuel **c** goal **d** hour
5. Self-driving cars use cameras to move
a dangerously **b** softly **c** safely **d** sadly
6. You will feel better, if you your medicine.
a taking **b** took **c** take **d** takes
7. If she this app, she will learn English.
a use **b** uses **c** used **d** using
8. If passengers forget their cards, they a ticket at the machine.
a buys **b** buy **c** buying **d** will buy
9. If you stand behind the yellow line, you will safe.
a was **b** is **c** been **d** be
10. If your mum by card, he will move faster.
a paid **b** pay **c** pays **d** will pay

4 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with a correct word:

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة :

1	think	pay	doors	wear	-----
2	elevator	screen	machine	travel	-----
3	monorail	bus	metro	easy	-----
4	cleaner	faster	card	smarter	-----
5	move	smoke	passenger	run	-----

5 Read the following passage then answer the questions:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة التالية :

Some cars today are even self-driving . These cars use cameras and computers to move safely on the road without a driver. They can stop at red lights, slow down for people on foot, and avoid accidents. In the future, self-driving cars may help people travel more safely and easily. Many countries are also using renewable energy to power their transportation. Like the sun, wind and water.

A) Write true (T) or false (F) :

	T	F
1. Self-driving cars use cameras and computers.	☐	☐
2. Self-driving cars can't help people.	☐	☐
3. Self-driving cars can avoid accidents.	☐	☐

B. Choose the correct answer:

4. is a renewable energy.

☐ a Petrol

☐ b Diesel

☐ c Wind

☐ d Oil

5. Many are also using renewable energy.

☐ a places

☐ b countries

☐ c cities

☐ d villages

6 Write a short paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمسة جمل عن :

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

Egypt's future transport

Cleaner - comfortable - mobile apps - underground

Test on Unit 5

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. Ali rode a bus.	☐	☐
2. The monorail moves above the ground.	☐	☐
3. Ali paid for the ticket in cash.	☐	☐
4. The monorail has digital screens.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- My new vehicles doesn't harm the environment, so it is
 a self-driving b polluted c eco-friendly d non-renewable
- ride the metro daily to get to their work.
 a Passengers b Elevators c Trains d Technology
- If I have time, I won't play video games.
 a won't b don't c didn't d doesn't
- If Rana goes to the library, she a book.
 a will read b read c reading d to read

3 Read and complete the sentences with the words in the box

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

moving - computer - safely - driving - accidents

My new car is self ① The car has camera and ② to move
 ③ on the road .It can avoid ④ In the future, many people will
 buy self-driving cars.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Egypt has amazing future transportation. People are travelling by using modern vehicles. Cairo has the monorail, it is a train that runs on a single track above the ground. It connects important places together. People can go to any place easily. They also ride the electric buses, which don't pollute the environment.

Passengers in Cairo and Giza travel through the metro .The metro is smart and incredible. It has digital screens and elevators.

A. Choose the correct answer:

- What does the word incredible mean ?-
 a usual b unpleasant c ugly d amazing
- What does the underlined pronoun it refer to ?
 a metro b monorail c metal d electric train

B. Answer the following questions:

- What is the monorail?
- What does the metro have?
- Is the electric bus pollute the environment?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- If we use the electric bus , the air (be) cleaner. SB
- If your dad (pay) by card, he will save time.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

- Egypt - I - imagine - have - will - faster - transportation.

- natural - comes - Renewable - from - energy - sources.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- what makes transportation safe and smart
- passengers must pay for the ticket

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٦٠) كلمة عن:

Giza Station

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

cleaner - pay by card

.....

.....

.....

.....



The Library That Time Forgot

المكتبة المنسية

Learning Outcomes

Speaking: التحدث

- Retell the sequence of events using target vocabulary. يعيد الطالب سرد ترتيب الأحداث مستخدماً الكلمات المستهدفة.
- Discuss key story elements (characters, setting and events) using simple language. يناقش الطالب عناصر القصة الرئيسية (الشخصيات، المكان والزمان، والأحداث) بلغة بسيطة.
- Ask and answer simple questions about characters and events. يسأل الطالب ويجيب عن أسئلة بسيطة عن الشخصيات والأحداث.
- Discuss the moral of the story. يناقش الطالب الدروس المستفادة الخاصة بالقصة.

Listening: الاستماع

- Retell the sequence of events using target vocabulary. يعيد الطالب سرد ترتيب الأحداث مستخدماً الكلمات المستهدفة.
- Discuss key story elements (characters, setting and events) using simple language. يناقش الطالب عناصر القصة الرئيسية (الشخصيات، المكان والزمان، والأحداث) بلغة بسيطة.
- Ask and answer simple questions about characters and events. يسأل الطالب ويجيب عن أسئلة بسيطة عن الشخصيات والأحداث.
- Discuss the moral of the story. يناقش الطالب الدروس المستفادة الخاصة بالقصة.

Reading: القراءة

- Understand and define new vocabulary words in context. يفهم ويعرف الطالب المفردات الجديدة في السياق.
- Identify the main characters, setting, and key events in a story. يتعرف الطالب على الشخصيات، المكان والزمان، والأحداث الرئيسية في القصة.
- Answer comprehension questions about the story. يجيب الطالب على أسئلة الفهم عن القصة.
- Identify supporting details from a story read aloud. يتعرف الطالب على التفاصيل الداعمة من القصة عن طريق القراءة بصوت عال.
- Recall story events in the correct order after listening. يستدعي الطالب أحداث القصة بالترتيب الصحيح بعد الاستماع.
- Identify the character who speaks in a story dialog read aloud. يتعرف الطالب على الشخصية التي تتحدث في نص حوار في القصة من خلال القراءة بصوت عال.

Writing: الكتابة

- Complete sentences using vocabulary from the story. يكمل الطالب الجمل مستخدماً الكلمات من القصة.
- Write a paragraph about the story using target vocabulary words and past simple tense. يكتب الطالب موضوعاً عن القصة مستخدماً الكلمات المستهدفة وزمن الماضي البسيط.

Characters of the story

شخصيات القصة



استمع إلى المخرجات:



Adam

ادم



Hana

هنا



Ziad

زياد



Lara

لارا



Fady

فادي

Story Vocabulary

كلمات القصة



dust

غبار



library

مكتبة



rusty

مصاب بالصدأ



windmill طاحونة الهواء



pipe

ماسورة



plumber

سباك



treasure

كنز



fountain

نافورة



town

مدينة

Definitions

تعريفات

dust	غبار	tiny particles that collect on surfaces when they are not cleaned. الأجزاء الصغيرة التي تتجمع على الأسطح عندما لا تكون نظيفة.
storage	مخزن / مستودع	a place where things are kept until they are needed. مكان توضع به الأشياء المراد حفظها متى نحتاجها.
rusty	مصاب بالصدأ	covered with reddish-brown spots from metal getting old and wet. مغطى ببقع لونها بني محمر بسبب أن المعدن قديم ورطب.
clinked	رنين خفيف	made a short, ringing sound, like metal hitting metal. يحدث صوت رنين قصير مثل تصادم المعادن.
library	المكتبة	a place where books are kept for people to read or borrow. مكان للمكتب تحفظ فيه للناس لتقرأها أو تستعيرها.
creak	صرير	a long, squeaky sound made when something like a door opens or closes. صوت طويل وحاد يصدر عندما نفتح باباً أو نغلقه مثلاً.
stacks	كومات	piles or groups of things placed one on top of another. أكوام أو مجموعات من الأشياء الموضوعة فوق بعضها البعض.
windmill	الطاحونة الهوائية	a machine with blades that turn in the wind, often used to make power or pump water. آلة بشفرات تتحرك بالرياح، غالباً تستخدم لتوليد طاقة أو تضخ الماء.
volunteers	متطوعون	people who offer to do work or help without being paid. الناس التي تعرض عملاً أو مساعدة بدون مقابل مادي.
town	مدينة	a place where people live that is smaller than a city but bigger than a village. مكان حيث يعيش الناس أصغر من المدينة الكبيرة ولكنه أكبر من القرية.
clogged	مسدود	blocked so that nothing can pass through. مُعترض سبيله بحيث لا يمكن لأي شيء أن يمر خلاله.
pipe	ماسورة	a long, hollow tube used to carry liquids from one place to another. أنبوب طويل أجوف يستخدم لحمل السوائل من مكان إلى مكان.
fountain	ماسورة	a structure that sends water up into the air. بناء يرسل الماء لأعلى في الهواء.

Story Elements

عناصر القصة



Setting المكان	A small town known for its colorful markets and friendly people ,mainly the old ,dusty library in the town square. مدينة صغيرة معروفة بالأسواق ذات الالوان الزاهية والناس الودودة، خاصة المكتبة القديمة المليئة بالفباريف ميدان المدينة.
Characters الشخصيات	Adam ,Lara ,Ziad ,Hana ,Fady ,their teacher ,the school principal ,and the townspeople. آدم ولارا وزياذ وهنا وفادى ومعلمهم ومدير المدرسة وسكان المدينة.
Plot الحبكة	The friends find an old key that opens a forgotten library .Inside ,they discover books ,maps ,and letters .They use what they learn to help their town and reopen the library. الأصدقاء وجدوا مفتاحاً قديماً يفتح المكتبة المنسية . واكتشفوا بالداخل كتباً وخرائط وخطابات استخدموا ما تعلمون لمساعدة المدينة واعادة فتح المكتبة.
Problem المشكلة	The library is closed and forgotten ,and the town's fountain is broken. المكتبة مغلقة ومنسية، نافورة المدينة مكسورة
Solution الحل	The children use knowledge from the library to fix the fountain and bring the library back to life. استخدم الأطفال المعرفة التي اكتسبوها من المكتبة ليصلحوا النافورة ويرجعوا المكتبة إلى الحياة مرة أخرى.

1



In the heart of a small town known for its colorful markets and friendly people, there stood an old library with **locked**⁽¹⁾ doors and shuttered windows. **Dust**⁽²⁾ **gathered**⁽³⁾ on its **steps**⁽⁴⁾, and most people had forgotten it was even there. One warm afternoon, Adam, Lara, Ziad, Hana, and Fady were helping their teacher clean the school's **storage**⁽⁵⁾ room. As Ziad moved an old desk, a **rusty**⁽⁶⁾ **object**⁽⁷⁾ **clinked**⁽⁸⁾ onto the floor.

في قلب بلدة صغيرة، تشتهر بأسواقها ذات الألوان الزاهية وسكانها الودودين، كانت هناك مكتبة قديمة بأبوابها ونوافذها المغلقة. تراكم الغبار على درجات السلالم، ونسي معظم الناس وجودها أصلاً. في ظهيرة دافئة، كان آدم ولارا وزياذ وهنا وفادي يساعدون معلمهم في تنظيف مخزن المدرسة. وبينما كان زياذ يحرك مكتباً قديماً، سمع صوت ارتطام شيء مصاب بالصدأ بالأرض.

1- locked	مغلق	2- Dust	غبار	3- gathered	تجمع
4- steps	درجات السلم	5- storage	مخزن	6- rusty	به صدأ
7- object	شيء	8- clinked	رنين خفيف		

2



"Look, there's something shiny in the back of the desk. It's a key!" Lara **exclaimed**⁽¹⁾, holding it up. It was large and bronze, with a **tag**⁽²⁾ that read: Library.

"Do you think it could open the old library in the **square**⁽³⁾?" Hana **whispered**⁽⁴⁾. The friends **exchanged**⁽⁵⁾ excited **looks**⁽⁶⁾. After school, they **hurried**⁽⁷⁾ to the library's heavy wooden doors. Fady slid the key into the **lock**⁽⁸⁾. With a **deep**⁽⁹⁾ **creak**⁽¹⁰⁾, the door was open.

They stepped into a big room **full**⁽¹¹⁾ of tall **shelves**⁽¹²⁾. Dusty books filled every **space**⁽¹³⁾, and the air smelled of paper and history. Sunlight **streamed**⁽¹⁴⁾ through **cracks**⁽¹⁵⁾ in the shutters, lighting up stacks of forgotten knowledge.

"انظروا، هناك شيء لامع خلف المكتب. إنه مفتاح!" صرخت لارا وهي ترفعه لأعلى. كان كبيراً وبرونزياً، وعليه بطاقة مكتوب عليها: مكتبة.

"هل تعتقدون أنه يمكن فتح المكتبة القديمة في الساحة؟" همست هنا. تبادل الأصدقاء نظرات حماسية. وبعد انتهاء المدرسة، أسرعوا إلى أبواب المكتبة الخشبية الثقيلة. أدخل فادي المفتاح في القفل. انفتح الباب محدثاً صريراً (صوت عالي يسببه الباب القديم عند الفتح).

دخلوا غرفة كبيرة مليئة بالرفوف الطويلة. ملأت الكتب المتربة كل ركن، وامتلاء الهواء برائحة الورق والتاريخ. تسلس ضوء الشمس من خلال شقوق شيش الشباك، حيث اضاء أكواماً من المعرفة المنسية.

1- exclaimed	صاح	2- tag	بطاقة	3- square	ميدان/ساحة
4- whispered	يهمس	5- exchanged	يتبادل	6- looks	نظرات
7- hurried	أسرعوا	8- lock	القفل	9- deep	عميقة
10- creak	صرير	11- full	مليء	12- shelves	رفوف
13- space	مساحة	14- streamed	تدفق	15- cracks	شقوق

3



“Look at these maps!” Ziad called, **unrolling**⁽¹⁾ a sheet of paper showing rivers, mountains, and villages from long ago.

Lara found a **collection**⁽²⁾ of **handwritten**⁽³⁾ letters **tied with**⁽⁴⁾ a **ribbon**⁽⁵⁾. “These are from travelers,” she said, eyes wide. “They describe places I’ve never heard of.”

Adam pulled a **thick**⁽⁶⁾ book from the shelf. Inside were **diagrams**⁽⁷⁾ for simple **machines**⁽⁸⁾ and science **experiments**⁽⁹⁾. “We could actually make some of these,” he said.

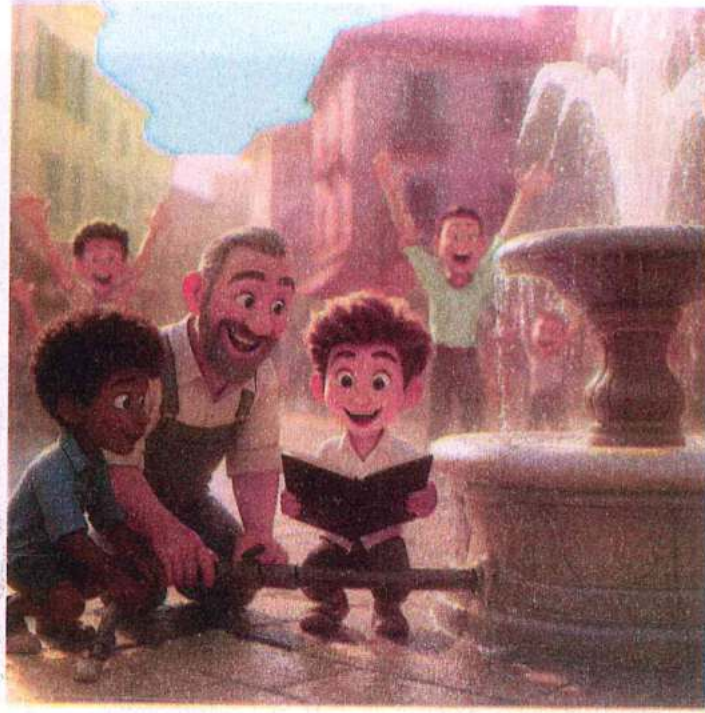
Over the next week, the friends met in the library every afternoon. They read about plants that could clean water, built a small **windmill**⁽¹⁰⁾ from one of the diagrams, and learned about **historical**⁽¹¹⁾ events that shaped their town.

نادى زياد، وهو يفتح ورقة تُظهر أنهارًا وجبالًا وقرى من زمن بعيد: “انظروا إلى هذه الخرائط!”. عثرت لارا على مجموعة من الرسائل المكتوبة بخط اليد مربوطة بشريط. قالت وعيناها متسعتان: “هذه من مسافرين. تصف أماكن لم أسمع بها من قبل.” سحب آدم كتابًا سميكًا من الرف. كان بداخله رسومات بيانية لآلات بسيطة وتجارب علمية. قال: “يمكننا صنع بعض منها.”

على مدار الأسبوع التالي، التقى الأصدقاء في المكتبة كل عصر. قرأوا عن نباتات تُنقي الماء، وبنوا طاحونة هواء صغيرة من إحدى الرسومات البيانية، وتعرفوا على أحداث تاريخية شكّلت مدينتهم.

1- unrolling	يفك	2- collection	مجموعة	3- handwritten	خط اليد
4- ribbon	شريط	5- ribbon	شريطة	6- thick	سميك
7- diagrams	مخططات	8- machines	آلات	9- experiments	تجارب علمية
10- windmill	طاحونة هواء	11- historical	تاريخي		

4



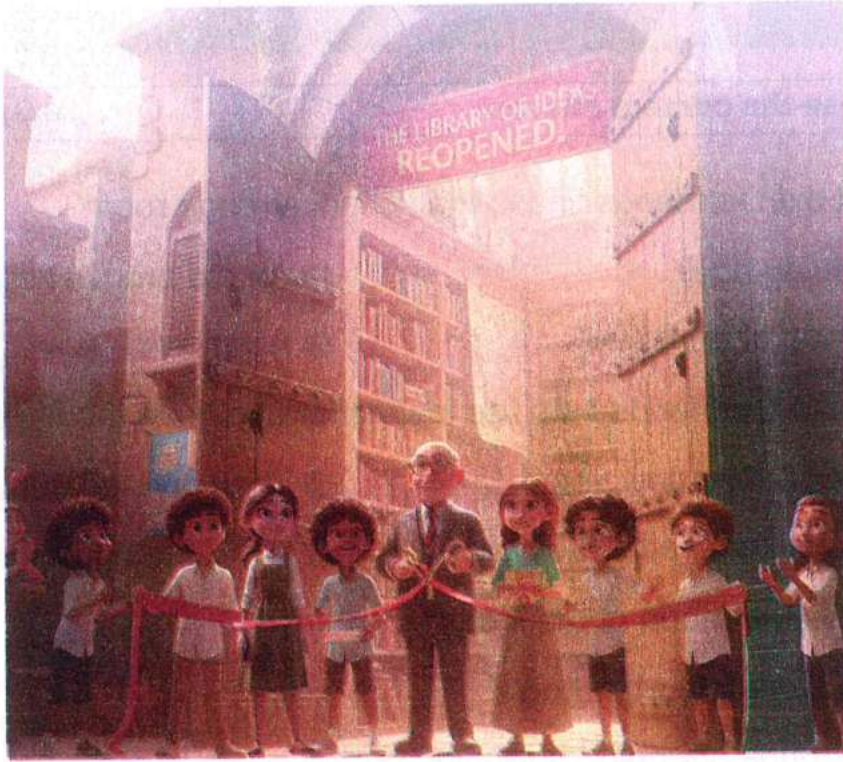
One day, Hana noticed the **fountain**⁽¹⁾ in the town square wasn't working. Using a **guide**⁽²⁾ from the library, they **figured out**⁽³⁾ the problem was a **clogged**⁽⁴⁾ pipe. With the help of a **local**⁽⁵⁾ **plumber**⁽⁶⁾, they fixed it. Soon, the fountain's water **sparkled**⁽⁷⁾ in the **sunlight**⁽⁸⁾, and the townspeople **cheered**⁽⁹⁾.

Word **spread**⁽⁸⁾ **quickly**⁽⁸⁾ about the children's **discoveries**⁽⁸⁾. The school **principal**⁽¹⁰⁾ visited the library, **surprised**⁽¹¹⁾ to see it **alive**⁽¹²⁾ again.

في أحد الأيام، لاحظت هنا أن نافورة ساحة البلدة لا تعمل. بمساعدة دليل من المكتبة، اكتشفوا أن المشكلة تكمن في أنبوب مسدود. وبمساعدة سباك محلي، أصلحوها. وسرعان ما تلالأ ماء النافورة تحت أشعة الشمس، فهتف سكان البلدة. انتشر خبر اكتشافات الأطفال بسرعة. زار مدير المدرسة المكتبة، مُندهشاً لرؤيتها تعمل من جديد.

1- fountain	نافورة	2- guide	دليل	3- figured out	اكتشف
4- clogged	مسدود	5- local	محلي	6- plumber	سباك
7- sparkled	يتلالأ	8- sunlight	ضوء الشمس	9- cheered	هتل/هتف
10- principal	مدير المدرسة	11- surprised	مندعش	12- alive	على قيد الحياة

5!



"This place is a **treasure**⁽¹⁾," he said. "It should be open to everyone."

Let's ask the townspeople to help, we can all work together to **fix**⁽²⁾ it," Adam said.

With the town's help, the library was cleaned, **repaired**⁽³⁾, and reopened. The friends became its first **official**⁽⁴⁾ **volunteers**⁽⁵⁾, helping others find books, **maps**⁽⁶⁾, and ideas.

As they stood together at the reopening **ceremony**⁽⁷⁾, Fady smiled. "We thought the key only opened a door," he said, "but it **actually**⁽⁸⁾ opened our **minds**⁽⁹⁾."

قال مدير المدرسة: "هذا المكان كنز. يجب أن يكون مفتوحًا للجميع".
واضاف ادم: "دعونا نطلب من أهل البلدة المساعدة، يمكننا جميعًا العمل معًا لإصلاحه".
بمساعدة البلدة، تم تنظيف المكتبة وإصلاحها وإعادة افتتاحها. أصبح الأصدقاء أول
متطوعين رسميين، يساعدون الآخرين في العثور على الكتب والخرائط والأفكار.
بينما وقفوا معًا في حفل إعادة الافتتاح، ابتسم فادي. قال: "كنا نظن أن المفتاح يفتح بابًا فقط،
لكنه في الواقع فتح عقولنا".

1- treasure	كنز	2- fix	يصلح	3- repaired	يصلح
4- official	رسمي	5- volunteers	متطوعين	6- maps	خرائط
7- ceremony	مراسم	8- actually	بالفعل	9- minds	عقول

★ Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

1. What did the friends find in the school storage room?
 - a A dusty book
 - b An old bronze key
 - c A map of the town
 - d A windmill
2. How did the friends help the town after exploring the library?
 - a They built a new library
 - b They opened a museum
 - c They fixed the fountain
 - d They cleaned the streets
3. What is the moral of the story?
 - a Keys are important tools
 - b Libraries are only for reading books
 - c History is boring
 - d Working together and learning can help the community

2 Answer the following questions

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية :

1. Can you give an example from the story where learning helped solve a problem?

2. How did the children help the town with what they learned?

3. Why did Fady say, "We thought the key only opened a door, but it actually opened our minds"?

3 Write (T) true or (F) false:

اكتب صح أم خطأ:

1. The library was always open and full of people. ☐
2. The children used a map to find treasure. ☐
3. The children used what they learned to help the town. ☐
4. The school principal thought the library should stay closed. ☐
5. The story teaches that knowledge can change lives. ☐

4 Who said these words?

من قائل هذه العبارات؟

1. "Look! There's something shiny on the back of the desk."
2. "These are from travelers. They describe places I've never heard of."
3. "We could actually make some of these."
4. "This place is a treasure. It should be open to everyone."
5. "Let's ask the town people to help; we can all work together to fix it."
6. "We thought the key only opened a door, but it actually opened our minds."

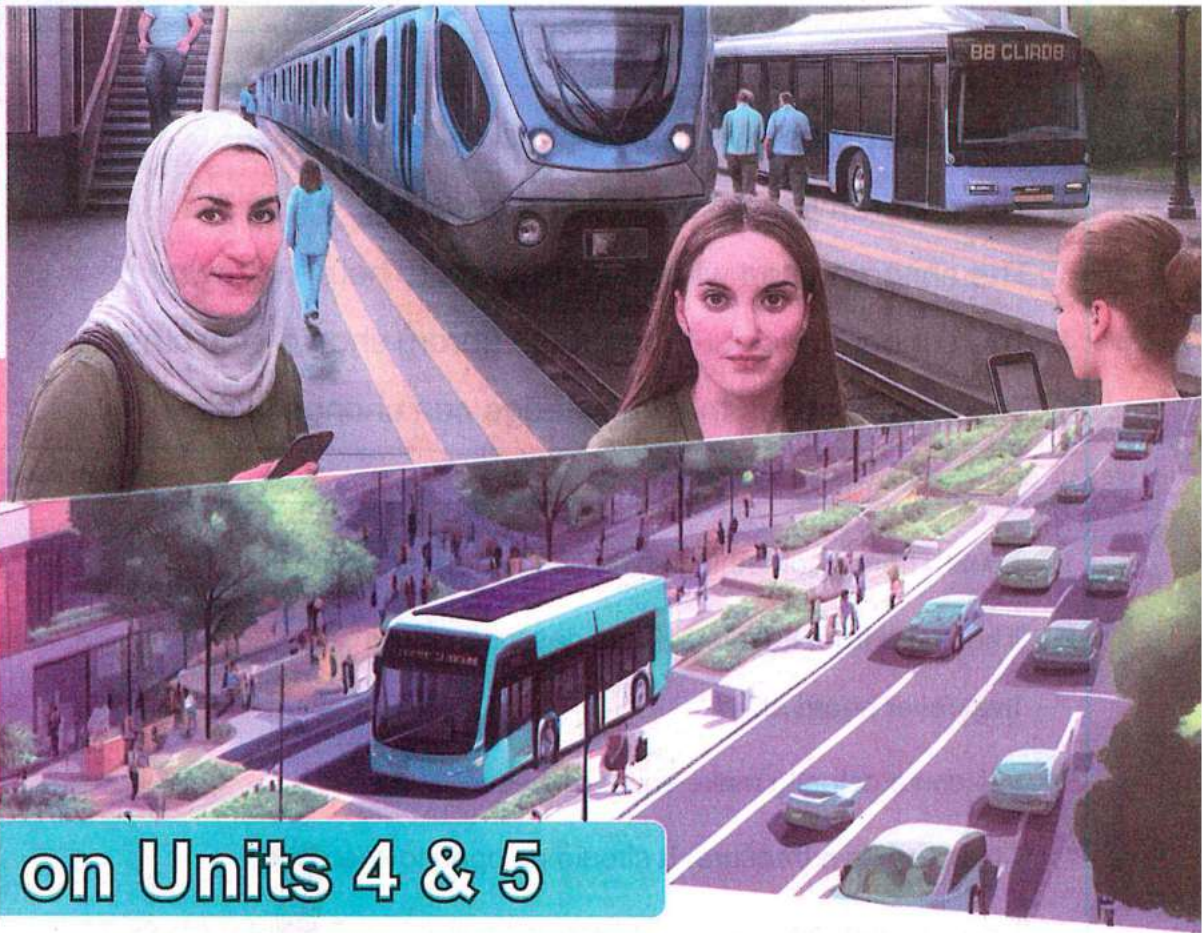
5 Write a short diary entry from one of the children's points of view:

اكتب مقالة يومية من وجهة نظر احد الاطفال بالقصة:

Dear Diary,

Today was unbelievable! While cleaning the storage room, we found an old key...

Review 2



on Units 4 & 5

Objectives of Review 2

- To revise the vocabulary and language from Units 4 - 5.

- يراجع التلاميذ المفردات والقواعد اللغوية الموجودة بالوحدات من ٤ إلى ٥.

- To revise the key letter sounds from Units 4 - 5.

- يراجع التلاميذ الصوتيات من الوحدات ٤ إلى ٥.

- To evaluate progress in Units 4 -5.

- يتم تقييم مدى نجاح التلاميذ في استيعاب الوحدات من ٤ إلى ٥.

★ Units 4 & 5

Unit 4



infrastructure

البنية التحتية



determination

العزيمة / الإصرار



highway

الطريق السريع



innovation

ابتكار / تجديد



extend

يتمدد / يوسع



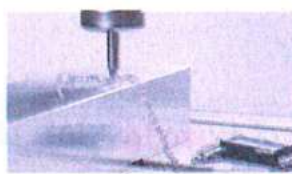
goods

بضائع / سلع



textile

نسيج / منسوجات



manufacture

تصنيع / يصنع



steel industry

صناعة الصلب



power source

مصدر طاقة



industrial

صناعي



self-reliant

مكتف ذاتيًا

country	بلد / دولة	economy	اقتصاد
transportation system	نظام النقل / شبكة المواصلات	investment	استثمار
power supplies	إمدادات الطاقة	transport (ed)	ينقل
product	منتج	produce (d)	ينتج
coastal	ساحلي	contribute (d)	يساهم / يشارك
coast	ساحل	complex	مجمع
smart	ذكي / عصري	pharaoh	فرعون

Language in Use

قواعد لغوية

Used to

اعتاد أن

Usage

استخدام

- نستخدم (used to) للتعبير عن عادات في الماضي (أفعال كنت تقوم بها بشكل متكرر في الماضي ولكنك توقفت عنها الآن)
- I **used to** play football every weekend.
- حالات في الماضي (أوضاع أو حقائق كانت صحيحة في الماضي ولكنها لم تعد كذلك الآن)
- In the past, transportation **used to** be slow.

Form

التكوين

○ Affirmative:

الإثبات

○ اعتاد أن (عادة أو وضع في الماضي ولكن لم تعد مستمرة)

مصدر الفعل + **used to** + inf. + الفاعل Subject

- Students **used to** write on small boards.

Negative

النفي

○ لم يعتد أن (للحديث عن أشياء لم تحدث في الماضي):

مصدر الفعل + **didn't use to** + inf. + الفاعل Subject

- Schools **didn't use to** have computers.

Question

السؤال

○ Yes/ No question

السؤال بـ «هل»

○ هل اعتاد أن (للسؤال عن وضع أو عادة في الماضي).

مصدر الفعل + **Did + subject + use to + inf.**

- Did students **use to** study online? - Did she **use to** practice the piano?

Unit 5



announcement

اعلان



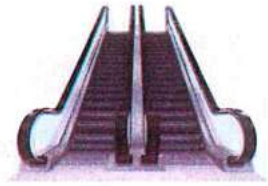
passengers

ركاب/ مسافرين



ticket machine

آلة التذاكر



escalator

سلم كهربائي



elevator

مصعد



smart doors

أبواب ذكية



digital screen

شاشة رقمية



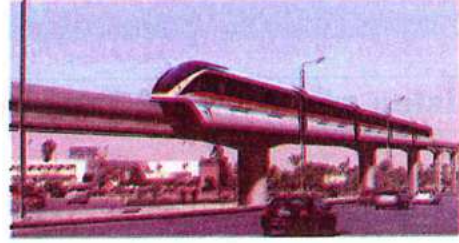
pay by card

الدفع عن طريق البطاقة



transportation

وسائل المواصلات



monorail

المونوريل / القطار احادي القضبان



eco- friendly

صديق للبيئة



pollution

التلوث



self-driving

ذاتي القيادة



renewable energy

طاقه متجددة

Language in Use

قواعد لغوية

First Conditional (Future Possibilities) الحالة الشرطية الاولى

1 Usage: الاستخدام

نستخدم حالة If الشرطية الاولى للتحدث عن المواقف المحتمل حدوثها في المستقبل.

2 Form: التكوين

If + present simple, + فاعل + will/ won't = will not + inf. الفعل في المصدر

فاعل + will/won't + inf. مصدر الفعل, if + present simple

يمكن أن تأتي (if) وسط الجملة لكن يجب ان نفصل بين الجملتين بفاصلة (,).

- If you take the monorail, you will arrive faster.

Usage: الاستخدام

نستخدم الحالة الاولى للجملة الشرطية للتعبير عن حدث يشترط حدوثه حدث آخر.

- If we use electric buses, the environment will be cleaner.

Question: السؤال

Will + فاعل + inf. + if + present simple?

- Will you stay home if it rains?

Yes, I will. No, I will not.

Test on Units 4&5

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. The capital city of Egypt is Luxor.	☐	☐
2. The Pyramids were built recently, about 100 years ago.	☐	☐
3. The Nile River is very important for farming in Egypt.	☐	☐
4. Visitors come to Egypt to see ancient temples.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- The passenger listened carefully to the station's about the train delay. SB
 a pollution b announcement c elevator d innovation
- You can easily buy a metro ticket from the without waiting in line. SB
 a ticket machine b LED lights c smart doors d facility
- We to ride our bikes in the park when we were young.
 a use b using c used d uses
- If you strong you will carry the heavy box.
 a were b are c was d is

3 Read and complete the sentences with the words in the box

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

renewable - monorail - infrastructure - construction - accidents

Our city is growing every day. It has new ① which includes wide roads, bridges, and modern transport systems. The workers here began the ② of a new hospital that will serve thousands. The city has a ③ that moves above the streets. Many new buildings use ④ energy to reduce pollution.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: SB اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Omar took his first trip to Egypt's New Administrative Capital with his school. As the bus entered the city, he noticed the smooth roads and tall buildings - signs of new infrastructure and modern construction. The students rode the monorail, amazed by how fast and quiet it was. Their teacher explained that Egypt's engineers use innovation to design smart transport systems. Later, they saw LED lights shining along the streets and electric buses waiting at the new station. The driver told them the buses use renewable energy, helping to keep the air clean. Omar realized that these projects make Egypt more self-reliant and eco-friendly. Before leaving, he said, "This city shows how determination and hard work can build a better tomorrow."

A. Choose the correct answer:

1. What means of transportation did the students use in the city?

- ☐ a A train ☐ b A car ☐ c A monorail ☐ d A taxi

2. What is special about the electric buses?

- ☐ a They use renewable energy ☐ b They move very slowly
☐ c They use a lot of fuel ☐ d They are only for tourists

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why were the students amazed by the monorail?

4. How does the New Capital reflect Egypt's future?

5. What is the main idea of the text?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. People (use) to cross the Nile by small boats before modern bridges were built. SB

2. If the workers (will finish) the road today, cars can pass tomorrow. SB

Review 2

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. building - has- that - open - The modern - automatically - smart doors.

2. you can - need cash - anymore; - pay by card - You don't.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. omar bought a ticket for the monorail but he didn't use it

2. How can they help egypt

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٦٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

Egypt is building a modern and eco-friendly future

monorails - renewable energy

Listening Material

نصوص الاستماع الواردة في الكتاب



نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بأسئلة الاستماع الواردة
في وحدات كتاب

Bit by Bit

Unit 1

Test (1) - Unit 1

Farida visited the Pyramids and saw the great Sphinx. She felt truly excited by the ancient history. She took many photos of the amazing treasures. It was an absolutely incredible trip.

Unit 2

Test (2) - Unit 2

A brilliant engineer designed a new flying gadget that runs on wind energy. It has a clever design and small wheels. We watched it move and fly for the first time. This useful invention will make travel much faster!.

Unit 3

Salma is a 15-year-old student explorer. She loves visiting historical sites. Last month, she explored a fascinating temple in Upper Egypt where she saw amazing carvings and ancient artifacts. Her dream is to become an archaeologist.

Review 1

Test (1 - 2 - 3)

The Ancient Egyptians were famous for creating the giant pyramids and detailed temples. Most Ancient Egyptians worked as farmers, growing food in the fertile land by the river. They also had a writing system called hieroglyphics. Their kings, called Pharaohs, were considered gods, and their culture left behind a rich heritage that we still admire today.

Unit 4

Unit 4 Lesson 3

The government is building new airports and better roads across the country to support trade and tourism. This helps local businesses sell their products, like furniture and textiles. Before, people used to walk long distances to work, and they were worried about the future. Now, better facilities light up our cities, and the steel industry helps develop our infrastructure.

Test (4) - Unit 4

Two weeks ago, Nelly visited the Pyramids of Giza, a famous tourist spot in Egypt. She saw the giant structures and learned about the pharaohs. The grand Sphinx was also there. She bought a flyer about the hieroglyphics. Nelly felt excited to see this amazing part of Egypt's culture.

Unit 5

Test (5) - Unit 5

Ali rode the monorail. It is a train that runs on a single track above the ground. It has digital screens and ticket machines. I paid by card.

Review 2

Test (4 - 5)

It is famous for the great Pyramids of Giza, which were built by the ancient Egyptians thousands of years ago. The Nile River flows through the entire country, bringing life and fertile land for farming. Today, Egypt is also home to modern, busy cities like Cairo. Visitors from all over the world come here to see the ancient temples.

ENGLISH

ملحق تسميع المفردات والواجب المنزلي

20
26

الصف السادس الابتدائي
الفصل الدراسي الثاني

6th
PRIMARY
SECOND TERM



دار غزة

للطباعة والنشر والتوزيع

ghazzahouse@gmail.com



Unit 1 Celebrating creativity

Lesson 1



Vocabulary

زيارة.....	لوحة جدارية (ترسم على الجدران).....
ضخم/هائل.....	ملهم.....
لوحة (فنية)/رسم.....	فنان.....
عملاق/ضخم جدًا.....	خزف/فخار.....
خشبي.....	تمثال.....
شاكوش.....	ملون/زاهي الألوان.....
قوي/مؤثر.....	أداة.....
يهمس.....	مهارة.....
فرشاة الرسم.....	لوحة قماش/قماش الرسم.....
تحفة فنية.....	لوحة الألوان.....
نحت/منحوتة/تمثال.....	معرض فني.....
	ينحت.....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past	P. P.
يهمس.....		ينحت.....		
يمزج/يخلط.....		يرسم.....		
يعرض (للجمهور).....		يسمع.....		
يُعجب ب.....				

Lesson 2



Vocabulary

عمل فني / تحفة فنية	تمثال / مجسم
مشهور	صلصال / طين
صورة فوتوغرافية	متحف
إطار	مبدع
موهبة	مزدحم
إبداع	خاص / مميز
حديث / عصري	ممل
زائر	عظيم
خيال	مرسم (مكان عمل الرسام)
رسام	مشوق

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past	P. P.
يُخَلِّق / يُنشِئ		يُخْبِر / يَقُول		
يُفَضِّل		يُصَبِّح		
يَتَذَكَّر		يَقِف		
يَسْتَمْتِع بـ		يَجِد		
يَصِف		يَشْتَرِي		
يَتَدَرَّب / يَمَارِس		يُظْهِر / يَعْرِض		

Activities

Lessons 1&2



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I saw huge paintings on a
 a. flower b. canvas c. pen d. star
2. I use my to paint because I like to use many colors.
 a. pencil case b. backpack c. palette d. eraser
3. My uncle is a/an He always carves wooden statues.
 a. vet b. civil engineer c. actor d. artist
4. She saw a huge on the wall.
 a. moral b. mural c. artist d. valley
5., I saw a big painting. Then, I walked into a room with amazing pottery.
 a. After that b. Finally c. First d. Second
6. The mother to her son to keep quiet during his grandparents visit.
 a. ignores b. whispers c. dislikes d. carves
7. A is a beautiful piece of art made with great skill.
 a. gallery b. paintbrush c. masterpiece d. palette
8. A is a piece of art made by shaping stones, woods, or metal.
 a. painting b. river c. drawing d. sculpture
9. Artists use their to mix colors on canvas.
 a. pencil case b. paintbrush c. calculator d. sharpener

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

sculpture - old - new - talent - whisper

Artists can carve wood or ① Many of them prefer ②, but others enjoy painting. All the types show ③ and creativity. If you visit a gallery, you can see modern and ④ pieces of art. Visitors tell each other about what they see.

painting - mural - masterpiece - amazing - gallery

Omar visited a big art ① He saw a nice ② on a canvas. Omar also admires the ③ on the wall. He pointed to an old painting and describes it as a ④

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Mohamed had an amazing visit to a big art gallery. He explored every room at the gallery. First, he saw huge painting on a canvas. Then, he went to a room with beautiful pottery and many statues. He is a young artist and he had a paintbrush and palette. He decided to start his own masterpiece when he arrived home.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined word "huge" means
a. small b. very big c. tiny d. little
- Mohamed explored all the
a. home b. statue c. gallery d. mural

B. Answer the following questions:

- Give a suitable title for the passage.
.....

- What did Mohamed decide to do?
.....

- What things did Mohamed see in the gallery?
.....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

- draw - to - Omar - young - a - who - was - artist - loved.
.....

- colors - palette - and - mix - Artists - paintbrush - use - their - to.
.....

- loved - a - strange - also - Lily - colorful - sculpture.
.....

- wait - couldn't - She - to - go - and - home - start.
.....

Dictation & Exercises

5. a painting - There - be - can - or - either - a photograph.

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form in brackets:

أكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات التي بين الأقواس:

- I like (**neither**) coffee and tea.
- I can go to either Cairo (**nor**) Giza.
- The task was neither boring (**or**) bad.
- I like both Amira (**nor**) Eman.
- Alaa dislikes either going to office (**nor**) school.
- The artwork was both interesting (**or**) colorful.

Lesson 3



Vocabulary

..... حَقًّا	 معرض فني
..... امرأة	 مصري
..... أبو الهول	 طالب جامعي
..... تمامًا / قطعًا	 صغير جدًا
..... بالتأكيد / حتمًا	 شيق
..... مذهل / رائع	 مثير للإعجاب / مؤثر
..... جدارية	 موهوب
..... رسم تخطيطي	 مذهل / لا يصدق

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past	P. P.
..... يتخيل		 يبدأ		
..... يعمل		 يصنع		
..... يثير الإعجاب / يبهر		 يري		
		 يبدأ		
..... يرسم / يدهن		 يصنع		

Lessons 4/5



Vocabulary

..... واسع	 ظل / تظليل
..... ضيق	 ناعم / أملس
..... قمة / أعلى	 لامع / براق
..... رعاية / حرص	 نقوش / أنماط
..... تصميم	 عود أسنان (خلة اسنان)
..... خيالي / وهمي	 حقيقي
..... خشن	 شاحب / باهت
..... صغير جدًا	 مُنحني / مُقوّس
..... متوسط	 رائع
..... ضخم	 لين / ناعم
..... مَعْبَد	 صلب
..... قاعة	 تاريخ
..... قطع أثرية / مُقتنيات	 المتحف المصري الكبير
..... قناع ذهبي	 كُنوز

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past	P. P.
..... يلمع		 يشعر / يبدو	.....	.....
..... يجفف		 يبني	.....	.....

Activities

Lessons 3,4&5



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Mahmoud Mokhtar was a famous
 a. vet b. artist c. actor d. doctor
2. I first start with a, then I completed the drawing.
 a. sketch b. mural c. masterpiece d. painting
3. Nahdet Masr is a big
 a. pyramid b. monument c. statue d. stood
4. The museum has ancient and statues.
 a. treasures b. plane c. cars d. stars
5. Families can eat at the museum's garden
 a. statue b. café c. school d. gallery
6. Visitors can see "Nahdet Masr" at the art exhibition.
 a. river b. statue c. tower d. wood
7. My school had a big art in paintings and drawings.
 a. exhibition b. match c. palette d. except
8. At the museum, we saw many from the past.
 a. history b. artifacts c. cameras d. mobiles
9. Mokhtar was a/an artist.
 a. foolish b. rough c. talented d. stupid
10. They learn about the of Egypt at the museum.
 a. sports b. color c. street d. history

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

wood - hand - shades - clay - base

Omar likes art. He is a real artist. Omar made a colorful ① vase. It is tall and has a round ② He shaped it by ③ He mixed some colors to create new ④

history - golden - wooden - treasures - hall

We went to the Grand Egyptian Museum yesterday. We saw ① _____ and many statues. We learn a lot about the ② _____ of Egypt. The museum has the ③ _____ mask of Tutankhamun. I took many pictures at the beautiful ④ _____.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Mahmoud Mokhtar was a talented artist. He made a big statue called Nahdit Masr. It shows a woman and a sphinx. This sculpture was incredible. I cannot imagine how he began to carve this huge statue. He also made beautiful mural. He painted when he was a university student on canvas. He had a pottery room which was very interesting.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Mokhtar was a talented artist. The word talented means _____.
a. lazy b. clever c. bad d. fast
- The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the _____.
a. statue b. rock c. stone d. mineral

B. Answer the following questions:

- Summarize the text in one sentence.

- What does the statue show?

- How was the pottery room?

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة

- big - called - Masr - Nahdet - He - made a - statue.

- see - Visitors - can - mask - of - golden - Tutankhamun - the.

- art - projects - favorite - my - It's - of - one.

Dictation & Exercises

4. mixed - the colors - of - some - I - new - create - shades - to.

5. galleries - beautiful - The Museum - has - many - halls - and.

6. videos - join - watch - workshops - Students - tourists - and.

7. hard - took - time - they - design - I - worked - on - and - my.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. i made a colorful clay vase

2. mokhtar made Nahdit masr statue.

3. it shows a woman and a sphinx

4. what can they see

Test on Unit 1

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false: استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):



نص الاستماع آخر الملحق

	T	F
1. People visit the museum to see the paintings.	☐	☐
2. They learn about the history of Egypt.	☐	☐
3. The museum has many living rooms.	☐	☐
4. Families can enjoy food in the café.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Nahdet Masr statue shows a and a sphinx.

- a. man b. woman c. child d. artist

2. Artists use a to paint a picture.

- a. palette b. papyrus c. news d. gallery

3. The new art gallery is small nor crowded.

- a. both b. either c. neither d. or

4. I like apples and bananas.

- a. both b. either c. neither d. or

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

canvas - gallery - palette - artist - papyrus

My brother was a young ① who loved to draw. My family took him to a big art ② He saw huge paintings on a ③ He wish he had his ④ with him.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

The Grand Egyptian Museum is an amazing place to visit. It has a large hall and galleries. The museum contains artifacts and treasures from the past. Visitors can see Tutankhamun golden mask. They can see Ramses II statue. Visitors can enjoy food in the garden café. They talk and take photos.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The word treasures means things.
a. valuable b. boring c. modern d. difficult
- Tutankhamun had a mask.
a. green b. wooden c. silver d. golden

B. Answer the following questions:

- Summarize the text in one sentence.
.....

- Where can visitors enjoy food?
.....

- What does the museum contain?
.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- Omar has (**either**) imagination and talent.
- The story was neither long (**and**) short.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

- can - wood - stone - carve - **Great** - or - artists.
.....

- and - halls - galleries - amazing - many - **The museum** - has.
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. he really was a talented artist

2. where is the art gallery located

8 Write a paragraph of about SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٦٠) كلمة عن:

A visit to an art gallery

Guiding elements

Canvas - Paintings

Unit 2 Wonderful inventions

Lesson 1



Vocabulary

جهاز.....	آلة.....
عجلات.....	جهاز الروبوت الشمسي.....
آلة موسيقية.....	مهندس.....
تلسكوب.....	الطاقة الشمسية.....
طاقة الرياح.....	عقلي.....
كهرباء.....	خطوة.....
نموذج.....	مفصل.....
فعال.....	خطة.....
منتج.....	مفيد.....
أدوات.....	اختراع.....
يُجمَع.....	أدوات/أجهزة.....
يحسن.....	مخطط.....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past	P. P.
يُستكشف.....		يُخترع.....		
يُختَبَر.....		يُصلَح.....		
يُتجاهَل.....		يُصمَّم.....		
يُستبدَل.....		يُنقَل.....		
يبتكر/يُجدد.....				

Lesson 2



Vocabulary

ملابس.....	قماش.....
المصريون القدماء.....	إبداع / صنع.....
بطانية.....	عناية / دقة.....
عامل ماهر.....	مهارة.....
عملية.....	قماش.....
النول / آلة نسيج.....	خيوط.....
خشبي.....	كتان.....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past	P. P.
يُدرَّب.....		يرتدي.....		
يصنَّع.....		يرسم.....		
يُنْتِج.....		يبيع.....		
يُنْهَم.....		يقابل.....		
يتطلَّب.....		ينسج.....		
يعتبر.....		يبنى.....		

Activities

Lessons 1&2



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. is to make a new idea or a product.

a. Invitation

b. Invention

c. Gadgets

d. Model

Dictation & Exercises

2. Ancient Egyptians used the to make clothes.
a. gadget b. assemble c. loom d. improve
3. My young brother the parts of his toy together.
a. assemble b. design c. invent d. replace
4. The carpenter uses his to fix the door.
a. glasses b. TV c. tools d. tablet
5. I take courses in English to my skills.
a. design b. place c. move d. improve
6. Mum has a beautiful dress.
a. plastic b. mineral c. linen d. loom
7. My uncle was a worker in his workshop.
a. lazy b. skilled c. bored d. loser
8. The robot on solar power.
a. plays b. steps c. runs d. stops
9. A/An is a detailed plan or drawing for making something.
a. Blueprint b. Gadget c. Tool d. Invention
10. The engineer had a/an idea so he solved the problem.
a. bad b. brilliant c. unclear d. far

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

fabric - loom - skills - threads - down

The ancient Egyptians were creative. They used the ① to make clothes or blankets. They made ② from linen. They used the loom to build fabric by moving ③ up and down. This is a process that needed a lot of ④

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

My son Omar is a **talented** boy. He made an incredible invention. He made the solar robot gadget. It is a simple gadget as a small machine. He designed a blueprint which means a detailed plan or drawing for making something. He also assembled small parts together by using his gadget. The robot moves on solar power.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word talented means
 a. lazy b. loser c. clever d. bad
2. A is a detailed plan.
 a. print b. blueprint c. robot d. power

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage?

.....

4. What is the invention?

.....

5. How can the robot move?

.....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Miss Alaa is our teacher (**which**) teaches us English.
2. This is the book (**who**) contains many ideas.
3. She is the scientist (**who**) invention was amazing.
4. The gadget (**who**) the workers used was made of steel.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

1. invention - an - amazing - The ancient - created - Egyptians.

.....

2. robot - on - solar - The - power - runs.

.....

3. here - have - We - young - engineer - a - talented.

.....

4. to - ideas - explore - This - invention - a - fun - way - is - new.

.....

Lesson 3



Vocabulary



مكسور / معطل	ورشة
محدد	مخترع
حياتنا اليومية	رائع / ساحر
قارة اوربا	لاحقا/ فيما بعد
ثانية	بدقة
مثير / مشوق	ترس
يقيس	دقيق
بندول	وقت/ زمن
يصمم/ تصميم	

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past	P. P.
يخزن		يخبر		
يقيس		يحافظ على		
		يدور		

Lessons 4/5



Vocabulary

قوي	هيكل / بناء
يحمي	فيضان / فيض
إمداد / يمد	يولد
حاوية	جنوب مصر
مادة خام	مصنع
عمل جماعي	حقل
مزرع	مزارع
سد	تلقائياً
قوة / طاقة	مرتب

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past	P. P.
يحدث		يزرع		
يفيض		يعطي		
يحمي				
يسد / يعيق / يمنع				
يواجه				
يجمع				

Activities

Lessons 3,4&5



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Egypt has a huge structure which is called the Aswan
 a. River b. Dam c. Canal d. Mountain
2. People used the sun and sand to tell the
 a. color b. sound c. time d. gear
3. The clock could every second.
 a. store b. measure c. treasure d. design
4. If something is it is correct and exact.
 a. funny b. accurate c. lazy d. hard
5. Pendulum is a piece that from side to side to keep time.
 a. runs b. walks c. changes d. moves
6. The dam is made from and concrete.
 a. ice b. stone c. glasses d. threads
7. The Aswan Dam supplies Egypt with to light homes.
 a. food b. furniture c. electricity d. clothes
8. The Aswan Dam is a great
 a. river b. animal c. city d. building
9. Farmers use water to crops all year.
 a. grow b. feed c. buy d. sell
10. The dam was built to stop the from flooding.
 a. Valley b. tree c. garden d. Nile

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

inventors - teachers - slowly - time - sun

People used the ① and sand to tell the time. Clever ② could build the first clock. They used gears and a pendulum. The pendulum moved ③ from side to side, helped the clock keep ④ more accurately.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Egypt has the Aswan Dam. It is a huge structure in Southern Egypt. The Dam helped Egypt to keep water for farmers to grow crops all the year. It generates powerful energy for homes and factories. It provides homes with electricity. People benefit from the electricity and water.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The Aswan Dam is located in Egypt.
 a. north b. southern c. eastern d. south west
2. The underlined word "grow" means
 a. eat b. move c. plant d. planet

B. Answer the following questions:

3. How can the Dam help Egypt?

.....

4. What does the Dam generate?

.....

5. Give a suitable title for the text.

.....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

1. Dam - one - is - the - greatest - buildings - Aswan - of.

.....

2. gears - clock - The first - used - and - a pendulum.

.....

3. famous - Europe - over - design - The clock - became - all.

.....

4. future - dam - Egypt's - The - changed.

.....

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. how did the invent to first clock

.....

2. aswan Dam is a huge structure

.....

Test on Unit 2

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false: استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق



	T	F
1. Omar was a talented young engineer.	☐	☐
2. It was a boring invention.	☐	☐
3. The robot runs on wind energy.	☐	☐
4. The wheels move when you place it in the sun.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Ancient Egyptians made clothes from
 a. wood b. plastic c. linen d. mineral
- The loom still modern machines that make our clothes.
 a. inspires b. runs c. buys d. tells
- She is the teacher teaches us at school.
 a. which b. who c. where d. whose
- The gadget I bought was amazing.
 a. that b. where c. who d. whose

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

runs - blueprint - improve - assembled - skill

I wanted to invent a gadget that could help the farmers. The first step was designing a detailed ① Second I ② the small parts using the right tools. The gadget ③ on wind power, so the wheels move when you place it in the wind. If something isn't working, I can easily ④ it. This invention is a fun way to explore new ideas every day.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Ancient Egyptians created the loom which helped them to make clothes. They made fabrics from linen. They built fabric by moving threads up and down, it is a process which needed a lot of skills. They could make colorful cloth which showed their creativity. They could inspire modern machines.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Ancient Egyptians used the to make clothes.
a. wind b. sun c. loom d. dam
- The underlined word "created" means
a. made b. moved c. ran d. drew

B. Answer the following questions:

- Summarize the text in one sentence.
.....

- How can they make fabrics?
.....

- What did ancient Egyptians show?
.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- Omar is the boy (**who**) book was red.
- I have a notebook (**where**) is amazing.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

- new - exciting - The clock - was - design - and.
.....

- benefit - The people - from - who - around - live - the dam - it.
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. where is the aswan Dam located

2. explain how it keeps your desk tidy

8 Write an email of (60) words:

اكتب أيمل من (٦٠) كلمة عن:

To your friend about ancient Egyptians inventions. Your name is Ahmed and your email is ahmed77@gmail.com. Your friend is Fatma and her email is fatma85@yahoo.com.

Guiding words

loom - linen

New Message

To

.....

From

.....

Subject

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Cc

Bcc

Lesson 1



Vocabulary

لغز / سر غامض	دفن
حجرة / غرفة	عالم آثار
اكتشاف	مومياء
باحث	جذاب / فاتن
تراث	غامض / سري
نقوش / منحوتات	محفوظ / محنط
قبر / مقبرة	أسلوب / طراز
متحف	لا يُنسى
قديم / أثري	محنط
تحت الأرض	فني
ممر	سر
مشهد	مندهش
يوناني	كاهن
موقع	

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past	P. P.
يُدهش / يُذهل		يقع		
يُفتن / يسحر				
يحدد موقع / يقع				
يكشف				
يستمر / يواصل				
يحافظ على / يصون				

Lesson 2



Vocabulary

..... معبد	 حاكم
..... أثر/ نصب تذكاري	 حدود
..... يرمم	 إمبراطور
..... معبد الدكة	 تقليد
..... رمز	 إله
..... مزدحم/ مشغول	 هادئ
..... حكمة	 ساحر
..... روماني	 كنز
..... خبير	 صاحب/ وضائ
..... بوابة	 جندي
..... صناعة النسيج	 خبرة

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past	P. P.
..... يُضِيف		 يعرف	.....	.....
..... يَحْتَرِم		 يَقِف	.....	.....
..... يَرْفَع/ يَرْبِي		 يُصْبِح	.....	.....
..... يُوسِّع		 يَقُول/ يُخْبِر	.....	.....
..... يُزَيِّن		 يُشْرِق/ يَلْمَع	.....	.....

Activities

Lessons 1&2



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Experts have the temple to protect it.
a. restored b. raised c. expanded d. shone
- The tell us stories of kings in the past.
a. canvas b. match c. trains d. carvings
- Rulers have designed temples for ancient like Thoth.
a. rivers b. valleys c. gods d. goods
- Egypt has with Sudan and Libya.
a. borders b. directions c. moves d. symbols
- Tuna el-Gebel is a mysterious site.
a. modern b. burial c. funny d. new
- A/An is a person who studies ancient places.
a. doctor b. engineer c. archaeologist d. teacher
- A/An is a special room inside a tomb.
a. market b. bridge c. garden d. chamber
- Researchers found birds in the ancient site.
a. preserved b. located c. served d. continued

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ واكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

gods - carvings - cultures - burial - Nubia

The temple of Dakka has stood quietly for thousands of years in ① Many rulers have designed temples for ancient ② Greek and Roman emperors have added new walls and ③ showing how different ④ have respected Egypt's traditions.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Tuna el-Gebel is located near Minya in the desert. It is a **mysterious** burial site. Archaeologists found in it underground chambers and long corridors filled with

Dictation & Exercises

ancient art. In the middle of the site stands the tomb of Petosiris, a high priest who lived more than two thousand years ago. His tomb walls are covered with beautiful carvings.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The of Petosiris stands in the middle of the site:
a. room b. tomb c. book d. desert
- The underlined word mysterious means
a. simple b. easy c. strange d. clear

B. Answer the following questions:

- Where is Tuna el-Gebel located?
.....

- Who is Petosiris?
.....

- What did archaeologists find?
.....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- Ali has (**move**) to his new house since 2024.
- What (**has**) you done at school?
- Omar (**haven't**) studied math yet.
- Have they liked the coffee? Yes, they (**has**).
- Mom and dad (**has**) bought a new house.
- They have (**decorate**) the room for the party.
- She has (**break**) the new phone already.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

- southern - **Nubia** - border - near - Egypt's - is
.....

2. show - both - The colorful - scenes - Greek - styles - and - Egyptian.

3. protected - Egypt - its - treasures - has - history - and

4. the River - Nile - to - close - stood - The temple - once

5. gates - tall - walk - its - Visitors - through.

6. worked - carefully - restore - Experts - have - to - it

Lesson 3



Vocabulary

مرشد سياحي	رسومات
حرفي/صانع	ملاحظات
تصميم/يصمم	فنان
زخرفة/طراز/نمط	نفس الشيء/مماثل
يكتشف	وادي الملوك
مقبرة ملكية	يدهن/يرسم
يلاحظ	ينقش

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	P. P.
يفهم		
يبنى		
يقول		

Lessons 4/5



Vocabulary

..... هياكل عظمية	 وادي
..... مخلوق	 حوت
..... مسارات/دروب	 حفريات
..... يُقَدَّر	 مستكشف
..... رمز	 وادي الحيتان
..... أهمية	 جولة سياحية
..... طبيعي	 كُتِيب/نشرة
..... جبل	 شعار
..... مُخبأ/مخفي	 ينشر/يرسل
..... عجائب/روائع	 يضمن/يتأكد
..... حيوانات برية	 غربي
..... عظام	 ملايين
..... رائع/مميز/استثنائي	 محيط
..... عظيم/خلاب	 تفاصيل
..... علمي	

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	P. P.
..... يسبح		
..... يجلب/يحضر		



Activities Lessons 3,4&5



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Wadi El-Hitan is in the Western Desert.

a. located

b. swum

c. told

d. paid

2. People who lived in Deir el-Medina were who built the royal tombs.
a. teachers b. craftsmen c. doctors d. nurses
3. Craftsmen have the tombs of the kings.
a. walked b. wrote c. tested d. carved
4. A guide helps tourists learn about ancient sites.
a. tower b. tour c. burial d. royal
5. Patterns on the walls show how the workers their homes.
a. decorated b. destroyed c. said d. sounded
6. To is to find something that was lost or unknown.
a. build b. understand c. discover d. carve
7. Wadi El-Hitan has become a heritage site.
a. city b. village c. world d. town
8. have discovered fossils of ancient whales.
a. Farmers b. Archaeologists c. Vets d. Doctors
9. Wadi El-Hitan is a of Egypt's rich natural history.
a. stop b. pottery c. symbol d. leaflet
10. We should our country's treasures.
a. neglect b. ignore c. refuse d. appreciate

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

royal - artists - painted - moved - families

Craftsmen built the ① tombs, they lived in Deir el-Medina. Skilled workers and ② have lived in it with their ③ They have ④ and carved the tombs of the kings.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Wadi El-Hitan is located deep in the Western Desert. It is also called the Valley of the Whales. Millions of years ago there was a big ocean there. Archaeologists have **discovered** hundreds of fossils of ancient whales that once swam there. Skeletons are longer than 15 meters. Wadi El-Hitan has become a world heritage site.

Dictation & Exercises

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Wadi El-Hitan is called also the Valley of the
a. fish b. whales c. dogs d. sharks
2. The underlined word "discovered" means
a. found b. removed c. took d. spoke

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Where is Wadi El-Hitan?
.....
4. What things archaeologists have discovered?
.....
5. Give a suitable title for the text.
.....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

1. site - become - has - a - world - Wadi El-Hitan - heritage.
.....
2. noticed - the walls - on - Have - you - the patterns?
.....
3. ancient - Deir - el-Medina - is - an - village.
.....
4. ancient - life - in - daily - understand - us - helps - Deir - el-Medina - Egypt.
.....
5. homes - how - the workers - They - show - decorated - their.
.....

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. have you noticed the patterns on the wall
.....
2. has she visited the museum
.....
3. wadi El-hitan is a symbol of Egypt's rich history.
.....

Test on Unit 3

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false: استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):



	T	F
1. The Temple of Dakka has stood in Nubia.	☐	☐
2. It's a symbol of Egypt's short history.	☐	☐
3. The temple stood close to the River Nile.	☐	☐
4. Experts destroyed it.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- A is a body that has been preserved for thousands of years.
a. chamber b. mummy c. room d. monument
- The Temple of Dakka is an ancient
a. monument b. club c. cinema d. school
- My brother worked at the school for ten years.
a. has b. have c. are d. is having
- Have you the news?
a. hear b. hears c. heard d. is hearing

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

families - carved - royal - local - village

Deir el-Medina is an ancient ① Craftsmen and their ② lived in it. They built the ③ tombs. They made and ④ the tombs of the kings in the Valley of the Kings.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Tuna el-Gebel lies in the desert near Minya. It is a mysterious burial site. It is famous for its underground chambers and long corridors filled with ancient art. Researchers found mummies of animals and preserved birds. People who visit Tuna el-Gebel feel like they have traveled back in time. Egyptians who visit it feel proud of their country's rich heritage.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Tuna-el Gebel lies in the
 a. river b. pond c. lake d. desert
2. It is famous for long
 a. stairs b. corridors c. rooms d. minerals

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What did researchers find?

4. How do Egyptians feel about Tuna el-Gebel?

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Experts have (restore) the temple since 2020.
2. Omar (have study) Medicine.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

1. southern - is - border - near - Nubia - Egypt's.

2. fifteen - longer - are - meters - skeletons - of - these - Some - than.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. have archaeologists discovered interesting things

2. these fossils tell a remarkable story

8 Write a paragraph of about SIXTY (60) words using the words below: تب فقرة إنشائية من (٦٠) كلمة عن:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٦٠) كلمة عن:

Wadi El-Hitan

Guiding phrases

fossils - whales

Unit 4 Egypt on the move

Lesson 1



Vocabulary

البنية التحتية	العزيمة / الإصرار
بضائع / سلع	الطريق السريع
يمتد / يوسع	ابتكار / تجديد
نظام النقل / شبكة المواصلات	اقتصاد
حديث / عصري	استثمار
ضيق	إمدادات الطاقة
صبور	جهد
نفق	نحو / باتجاه
العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة	تقدم / تطور
أمة / وطن / دولة	الرفاهية
مترابط	تنمية / تطور
مستعد / جاهز	قومي / وطني
يعكس / يعبر عن	فارغ
	يطور

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past	P. P.
يربط		يعرض		
يمتد		يزرع / ينمو		
يحسن		يجلب		
يسمح				
يتقدم				

Lesson 2



Vocabulary

..... تصنيع/يصنع	 تصنيع/يصنع
..... صناعات الصلب	 صناعي
..... مصدر طاقة	 مكثف ذاتيًا
..... اقتصاد	 ينتج
..... منتج	 يساهم/يشارك
..... متقدم/حديث	 الطاقة الشمسية
..... يصدر/تصدير	 طاقة الرياح
..... يستورد/استيراد	 العمل الجماعي
..... يوضح/يزيل	 وقود
..... زراعة	 إسمنت
..... وظائف محلية	 الشرق الأوسط
..... مصنع	 جودة عالية
..... آلة	 الغاز الطبيعي

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past	P. P.
..... ينتج		 يضيء		
..... يصنع				
..... يطور				
..... يؤمن بـ				
..... يوجد				

Activities

Lessons 1,2



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The new projects show Egypt's to improve its economy.
a. transportation b. determination c. nation d. area
2. Egypt the roads in every governorate.
a. removes b. reduces c. extends d. decreases
3. Textile industry produces high-quality clothes and
a. fabrics b. metal c. plastic d. bread
4. Egypt developed industry, which helps build new roads.
a. sugar b. rock c. steel d. clothes
5. The industry now manufactures many products such as pasta and snacks.
a. food b. clothes c. fabric d. flax
6. Egypt has new factories which help in growing
a. music b. games c. economy d. parks
7. I used to a bike when I was young.
a. ride b. rode c. riding d. rides
8. is to produce goods using machines.
a. Provide b. Sell c. Manufacture d. Believe
9. Egypt becomes more modern and more self-.....
a. drive b. harm c. dark d. reliant
10. you use to live in Cairo?
a. Do b. Did c. Does d. Is

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

tunnels - Capital - highways - grow - plant

Skilled engineers are building modern ①, bridges, and ② that connect all parts of the country. The New Administrative ③ shows how the nation continues to ④ and develop.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Egypt has started new infrastructure projects in recent years. Transportation in the past was difficult, and moving and transporting goods was slow and difficult. Modern transportation systems allow people to travel faster. Egypt's new projects **improve** economy. The New Administrative Capital shows how they develop the roads and bridges.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Modern transportation systems help to faster.
a. write b. travel c. remove d. complete
- The underlined word improve means to become
a. better b. butter c. bad d. worse

B. Answer the following questions:

- Summarize the text in one sentence.
- What does the New Capital show?
- How was transportation in the past?

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- Omar (**not use**) to drink tea when he was young.
- (**Do**) your sister use to ride a bike?
- What did he (**used**) to do?
- Did Ali use to play football? - No, he (**did**).
- She used to (**studying**) for many hours.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

- projects - Egypt - started - has - new - recent - years - infrastructure.
.....
- long - took - a - between - Traveling - cities - times.
.....
- clothes - produces - high-quality - industry - The textile.
.....
- becomes - Egypt - modern - self - more - reliant - and.
.....
- has - Egypt - power - such - as - new - sources - gas - natural.
.....
- narrow - crowded - and - Roads - were - the past - in.
.....

Lesson 3



Vocabulary

الزراعة.....	الطريق السريع.....
سلع.....	مكتف ذاتيا.....
حقل.....	ازدحام مروري.....
محلي.....	سياحة.....
عبر / في جميع أنحاء.....	أثاث.....
في الخارج.....	فحم.....
النسيج.....	حطب / وقود خشبي.....
حكومة.....	مطار.....
الصناعة.....	يدعم.....
تغييرات / تعديلات.....	يقلل.....
تجارة.....	تقدم.....
تكنولوجيا.....	

Lessons 4/5



Vocabulary

..... ساحلي	 مجمع
..... ساحل	 فرعون
..... ذكي / عصري	 اللغة الهيروغليفية
..... ممرات المشاة (ممشى)	 ثقافة
..... موقع سياحي	 بارز
..... رؤية	 منطقة ثقافية
..... شمالي	 حيوى
..... البحر الأبيض المتوسط	 منشور
..... ذهبي	 عملاق
..... رملي	 عمود
..... هادئ/مسالم	 عظيم
..... رفاهية/فخامة	 جذاب
..... شجرة نخيل	 يتخيل
..... جامعة	 بوابة
..... مركز تسوق	

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past	P. P.
..... يجمع / يدمج		 يقع		
..... يعكس				
..... يكرم				
..... يشمل				
..... يتخيل				
..... يتحول إلى				
..... يبقى / يظل				

Activities

Lessons 3,4&5



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. New Alamein is a modern city. It lies on the coast.
a. river b. desert c. coastal d. ocean
2. Visitors can stay in luxury
a. hotels b. schools c. bridges d. factories
3. Luxor Temple was built to the god Amun.
a. ignore b. sell c. honor d. destroy
4. Luxor Temple was known for giant
a. books b. markets c. stores d. statues
5. New Alamein reflects Egypt's for progress.
a. vision b. revision c. show d. complex
6. and planning can turn the desert into a modern city.
a. Statues b. Innovation c. Temples d. Columns

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

reliant - factories - roads - proud - sad

Egyptian people are ① because their country has become more self- ② The government builds new ③ and bridges. In the past, there weren't many ④ and people didn't use to have machines.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

New Alamein city is a coastal city. It lies on the beautiful northern coast. It has roads, green parks and tall glass buildings. Visitors can enjoy beaches and **luxury** hotels. The city has universities and shopping centers. New Alamein reflects Egypt's vision for progress, showing how planning can turn the desert into a modern city.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. New Alamein city is a city.
 a. river b. desert c. coastal d. mountain
2. The underlined word luxury means
 a. expensive b. cheap c. colorful d. worse

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What does New Alamein have?

.....

4. What does New Alamein reflect?

.....

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

1. home - many - a - new - for - Egyptians - New Alamein - is.

.....

2. farming - depend - Egypt - to - used - mostly - on.

.....

3. roads - The government - builds - new - and - bridges.

.....

4. Amun - the god - built - was - It - honor - to.

.....

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. New alamein reflects Egypts vision

.....

2. it was built to honor the great pharaohs

.....

Test on Unit 4

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false: استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):



نص الاستماع آخر المالحق

	T	F
1. Luxor Temple is in the city of Aswan.	☐	☐
2. It was built to honor the god Amun.	☐	☐
3. The temple is known for its giant doors.	☐	☐
4. Visitors can walk through its grand gates.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The temple is known for its giant _____, tall stone columns, and beautiful hieroglyphics.

- a. libraries b. schools c. statues d. airport

2. Modern _____ systems make it easy for people to go to work quickly.

- a. homes b. food c. transportation d. reading

3. Did they used to study online? - Yes, they _____.

- a. do b. does c. is d. did

4. She used to _____ English when she was young.

- a. teach b. teaches c. taught d. is teaching

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

dirty - products - machines - proud - clean

My uncle has a factory. The factory uses ① _____ power like wind energy. It has many ② _____ to produce many ③ _____. I am ④ _____ of my uncle, because he helps in growing our economy.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Alexandria is a coastal city. It is an amazing city. It has many peaceful beaches, restaurants and many hotels. You can visit Qaitbay Citadel there. You can relax at the city at holiday during summer.

Alexandria is also a very old and historical city. You can explore amazing places like the great Library of Alexandria, which is a modern building but honors a famous ancient one.

Walking around the streets, you will see old buildings and feel the mix of different cultures. It is a wonderful place to walk, take photos, and learn about the past while enjoying the fresh sea air. The city is a perfect blend of history and modern life by the sea.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined word peaceful means
 a. calm b. noisy c. busy d. bad
- Alexandria is a/an city.
 a. desert b. oasis c. coastal d. river

B. Answer the following questions:

- What places you can visit in Alexandria?

- What does Alexandria have?

- What is the main idea of the text?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- Alaa used to (**taught**) online courses.
- They (**not/use**) have lights in the past.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

1. Egypt - on - mainly - in - farming - used - depend - to - People.

2. Egypt - steel - a strong - has - industry - developed.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. what does Egypt build

2. clothes are sold to another countries

8 Write a paragraph of about SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٦٠) كلمة عن:

New Alamein City

Guiding phrases

hotels - universities

Lesson 1



Vocabulary

اعلان.....	سلم كهربائي.....
ركاب/مسافرين.....	الدفع عن طريق البطاقة.....
ألة التذاكر.....	شاشة رقمية.....
أبواب ذكية.....	مصعد.....
المترو.....	وصول.....
الدفع النقدي.....	سلم.....
كهربى.....	مصدر للضوء الكهربى.....
تلقائى.....	قاعدة/ منبر.....
خطوة للخلف.....	البيئة.....
عملات معدنية.....	أسعار.....
كهرباء.....	محطة.....
فى الغالب/المعظم.....	مراكز التسوق.....
تكنولوجيا.....	عبر الانترنت.....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past	P. P.
يغلق.....		يركب.....		
يوفر.....		يدفع.....		
يتوقف.....		يبيع.....		
يلعب/يعزف.....		يسمع.....		

Lesson 2



Vocabulary

وسائل المواصلات.....

انظمة.....

مسار / ممر منفرد.....

يقف.....

تماما / بشكل صحيح.....

الاتوبيسات الكهربائية.....

يتحسن.....

مقاعد.....

المونوريل / القطار احادي القضبان.....

دخان.....

يتوقف.....

بذكاء.....

مسموح.....

بنزين / وقود.....

أمن.....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past	P. P.
يربط.....		يكبر.....		
يكمل.....		يصبح.....		
يعيق.....		صنع / يجعل.....		
		يتبع.....		

Activities

Lessons 1,2



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. You can see announcements on _____ screens in the metro.
 a. digital b. elevator c. escalator d. ticket
2. The _____ is a moving platform that goes up or down in a building.
 a. stairs b. elevator c. car d. motorbike
3. Can I pay by _____?
 a. bills b. card c. cart d. paper
4. Passengers mustn't _____ the smart doors.
 a. block b. run c. follow d. pay
5. I will take _____ 3 to go to Giza.
 a. Fine b. Line c. Thread d. Circle
6. Omar _____ the rules if he doesn't speak loudly.
 a. will follow b. follow c. followed d. are following

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

connect - single - monorail - machines - disconnect

Egypt has one exciting project, it is the ① _____. It is a train that runs on a ② _____ track above the ground. It will ③ _____ important places quickly. Passengers will find ticket ④ _____ and digital screens.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Egypt developed the Metro. It changes the trains into new ones with smart doors that open and close automatically. There are digital screens which show the next station. There are announcements in two languages. I can pay with cash or by card in the new ticket machines. There are elevators for old people and sick people. The metro is **green** which means that it is better for the environment and never pollutes it.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined word green means
 a. pollute b. clean c. dirty d. unhealthy
- You can pay with or by card.
 a. bills b. mobile c. cash d. coins

B. Answer the following questions:

- How do smart doors work?

- What do digital screens show?

- What is the main idea of the text?

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- If you take the monorail, you (arrive) faster.
- If passengers (forgot) their cards, they will buy a ticket at the machine.
- If your mum pays by card, she (save) time.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

- smart - doors - bright - and - The bus - has - lights - LED.

- escalators - and - elevators - stations - Some - have.

- travel - the way - Egypt - changing - is - people.

- phone - card - or - pay - by - Passengers - able - to - will - be.

Lesson 3



Vocabulary

يؤذي / يضر	صديق للبيئة
يحمي	التلوث
وقود	ذاتي القيادة
ضوضاء	طاقه متجددة
بسهولة	تلوث الهواء
كوكب الأرض	المركبات
البيئة	نقى
رياح	يهدئ السرعة
بنزين	حادثة
جيل	بلاد
كوكب	مصادر طبيعية

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past	P. P.
يؤذي		ينفذ / ينتهي		
يتجنب		يختار		
يقلل				
يشغل				

Lessons 4/5



Vocabulary

رؤية	تحت الأرض
صديق للبيئة	بشكل مريح
اهدى	تطبيقات الهاتف المحمول
المستقبل	لافتات رقمية
دقائق	مسافرين
تكنولوجيا	حزام الأمان
حالا/مجرد	يشبه
بطاقات ذكية	كتيب ارشادي
محطات	محطات

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past	P. P.
يتخيل		يرتدي		
يحمل				
ينتظر				
يقدم				
يخلق				
يأمل				

Activities

Lessons 3,4&5



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Vehicles become eco-friendly and do not the environment.

- a. care b. harm c. benefit d. helps

2. Electric buses and trains use less fuel and make less

- a. benefit b. quiet c. noise d. peace

3. energy comes from natural sources like the wind, the sun and water.
 a. Non-Renewable b. Renewable c. Finished d. Completed
4. Self-driving cars can move without a/an
 a. diver b. vet c. engineer d. driver
5. will make travel easier.
 a. Pollution b. Technology c. Crowded d. Trees
6. Self-driving cars use cameras to move
 a. slowly b. dangerously c. safely d. sadly

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

computers - driver - road - down - up

Egypt has now many self-driving cars. These cars use cameras and ①
 to move safely on the ② without a ③ They can stop at red lights,
 slow ④ for people on foot and can avoid accidents.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

1. safely - Cars - to - move - use - cameras - computers - and.

2. We - future - generation - for - protect - Earth.

3. comes - natural - Renewable - sources - energy - from.

4. transportation - faster - will - have - I - imagine - Egypt.

5. amazing - which - are - Egypt - has - electric - also - buses.

6. Egypt - in - tell - about - you - to - want - I - transport .

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. how are you

2. I'm really excited about the smart transportation in egypt

Test on Unit 5

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false: استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):



	T	F
1. Egypt is changing the way people travel.	☐	☐
2. The cities will become slower and cleaner.	☐	☐
3. The monorail has a single track.	☐	☐
4. The monorail moves above the ground.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- ride the metro daily.
a. Monorails b. Machines c. Passengers d. Ships
- We buy tickets and put them in ticket to ride the train.
a. escalator b. elevator c. doors d. machines
- If you the monorail, you will arrive early.
a. took b. takes c. take d. taking
- If you stand behind the yellow line, you will safe.
a. been b. being c. be d. are

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

elevators - smart - bright - machines - dark

At each station, passengers will find ticket ① The stations have ② to help old people. The buses in Egypt now has ③ doors and ④ LED lights.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

You can travel around Egypt in many ways! For traveling long distances between big cities like Cairo, Luxor, and Aswan, the trains are a very popular and comfortable option. You can also take long-distance buses which are generally cheaper.

Inside the cities, especially Cairo, people use the metro to quickly avoid the heavy

traffic. Taxis and tuk-tuks are everywhere. And don't forget the River Nile! Many tourists travel on the Nile by ships or a traditional sailboat called a felucca to see ancient temples.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You can avoid heavy traffic by using the
a. felucca b. long-distance bus c. metro d. taxi
2. The traditional sailboat used for travel on the River Nile is called a
a. taxi b. felucca c. tuk-tuk d. metro

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the text?
4. Why is the Cairo Metro system important?
5. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. If passengers listen to announcements, they (**know**) the next stop.
2. If we use the electric bus, the air (**be**) cleaner.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

1. doors - the smart - block - mustn't - **They**.
2. the environment - for - makes - **This** - the metro - better.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. digital screen is an electric device
2. what is the next stop.

8 Write a paragraph of about SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٦٠) كلمة عن:

Electric buses

Guiding phrases

clean energy - smart doors

امتحانات عامة على منهج الفصل الدراسي الثاني

Test 1

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق



	T	F
1. The artist didn't use to paint murals, only small pictures.	☐	☐
2. He used to mix colors using a palette and a paintbrush.	☐	☐
3. He used to say that art was boring and difficult.	☐	☐
4. He didn't use to listen to music while painting.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Using renewable energy is a/an way to power our homes and transport.

- a** eco-friendly **b** ancient **c** crowded **d** narrow

2. The word "....." means a detailed plan or drawing for making something.

- a** blueprint **b** gadget **c** pendulum **d** gear

3. The new monorail runs on electricity is very quiet.

- a** who **b** which **c** where **d** whose

4. the volunteers cleaned the park?

- a** Are **b** Have **c** Do **d** Were

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

extend - construction - self-reliant - encourage - determination

Young people are the future of our country. We must ① them to have strong ② to finish the projects. They can help with the ③ of new cities. When they learn to solve problems themselves, they become more ④ This success will help achieve both goals and dreams.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Last summer, my family visited the amazing temples of Abu Simbel. Our tour guide told us an incredible story. Long ago, the whole temple was moved to save it from the river! It was a great discovery for me. The temples were a monument built by a powerful ruler, Ramses II. We saw the giant statues at the entrance. The design was **magnificent**. Inside, the walls were covered with carvings and hieroglyphics. Our guide pointed to a special pattern that showed the pharaoh's victories. I felt proud to see this part of our heritage. It was a trip I will never forget.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- The temples of Abu Simbel were built by the powerful ruler,
☐ a King Tut ☐ b Ramses II ☐ c Cleopatra ☐ d Narmer
- The word "**magnificent**" means
☐ a poor ☐ b simple ☐ c wonderful ☐ d ordinary

B- Answer the following questions:

- What is the main idea of the passage?

- Why was the whole temple of Abu Simbel moved?

- How was the trip?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- Did you (**used**) to live near the old airport before it moved?
- If the workers (**will finish**) the road today, cars will pass tomorrow.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

- over - became - Europe - **The** - clock - design - all - famous

- can - card - by - or - **You** - pay - cash.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. have you ever visited the Grand Egyptian Museum

2. we saw a beautiful fountain in the park

8 Write a paragraph of about SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٦٠) كلمة عن:

An archaeological site

Guiding words

researchers - carvings

Test 2

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق



1. Passengers buy tickets from the digital screens.

2. The station has elevators for people with bags.

3. Announcements tell passengers when the train arrives.

4. People must leave trash at the station

T	F
☐	☐
☐	☐
☐	☐
☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

- I wish I had my _____ with me right now to create a colorful mural on this wall.
a ticket **b** paintbrush **c** hammer **d** card
- A clear _____ on the train tells passengers about the next stop.
a announcement **b** conversation **c** windmill **d** chamber
- Have you _____ by card for your bus ticket before?
a pays **b** pay **c** paid **d** paying
- We _____ use to see so many eco-friendly buses on the roads.
a aren't **b** weren't **c** don't **d** didn't

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

enchancing - preserved - artifacts - heritage - tomb

An archaeologist found a secret burial chamber in the desert valley. Inside, she saw a mummy and many old ¹ _____. The mummy was very well ² _____. This amazing discovery helps us understand our ³ _____. It is an ⁴ _____ place that helps us appreciate the past.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

A team of young engineers wanted to create an eco-friendly invention to help their city. They started by drawing a detailed blueprint. Their goal was to design a small, self-driving machine that could clean public parks. They began to **assemble** the gadget in their workshop, using special tools. The machine runs on renewable energy from the sun, so it produces no pollution. It has smart sensors to avoid trees and benches. This incredible invention shows how creativity and determination can solve problems. If cities use this solar-powered cleaner, our parks will become much cleaner and greener.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- The passage is mainly about _____.
a the best building tools **b** drawing plans
c a sun-powered cleaning machine **d** cleaning parks
- The underlined word "assemble" means _____.
a draw plans for something **b** put all the parts together
c invent a new tool **d** drive a machine automatically

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the text?

4. What will happen if cities use this solar-powered cleaner?

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. If you (not/listen) to the announcement, you will miss your stop.

2. The museum (whose) we visited yesterday has ancient artifacts.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

1. to - have - use - computers - didn't - Schools

2. passengers - many - every - train - carries - day - The

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. modern transportation helps the economy grow

2. will you travel to Aswan this summer

8 Write a paragraph of about SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٦٠) كلمة عن:

The first clock

Guiding words

Why did an inventor create the first clock?

How did it change people's daily lives?

Test 3

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق



	T	F
1. Omar is a talented student who loves music.	☐	☐
2. He used wood and tools to carve a figure.	☐	☐
3. His teacher thought his work was boring.	☐	☐
4. He will show his artwork at a school exhibition.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The students learned how to _____ the solar robot gadget by following the steps.

- a** assemble **b** discover **c** cut **d** burn

2. The craftsman helped _____ the old carvings on the wall.

- a** restore **b** transport **c** generate **d** ignore

3. You can go up to the platform _____ by the elevator or by the escalator.

- a** either **b** neither **c** both **d** so

4. We _____ to depend on renewable energy like solar power.

- a** not used **b** don't use **c** aren't used **d** didn't use

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

digital - infrastructure - pay - manufacture - eco-friendly

An announcement welcomes passengers to the new monorail. This electric train is very ① _____ and helps reduce air pollution. Inside, a ② _____ screen shows the next stop. People can ③ _____ by card for their tickets. This modern transport is a great new part of the city's ④ _____.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Making cloth was a very important part of ancient Egyptian life. The main fabric they used was linen. Linen came from plants that grew near the River Nile.

Egyptians used simple wooden looms to weave the linen. This job needed great skill. First, they put thin threads onto the loom. Then, the weaver worked carefully to make a pattern by weaving the threads up and down. They used this fabric for clothes, boat sails, and wrapping mummies. Today, we can still see these old looms and the linen cloth in museums, which is a wonderful discovery of their heritage.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What is the main idea of the text?

- | | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| a The Nile river plants. | b Making cloth in ancient Egypt. |
| c Egyptian museums. | d Weaving patterns. |

2. What did Egyptians use linen for?

- | | |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| a Building houses. | b Making tools. |
| c Clothes and boat sails. | d Writing papers. |

B- Answer the following questions:

3. How did they get linen?

4. What does the underlined word "fabric" mean?

5. What did Egyptians use to weave linen?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. We saw a whale fossil **(that)** skeleton was over 15 meters long.

2. If we use renewable energy, we **(reduce)** pollution.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

1. steel - industry - developed - **Egypt** - a - strong - has

2. used - a - the - pendulum - clock - gears - **The** - first - and

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. Listen The announcement starts now

2. Where is the famous London Tower

8 Write a paragraph of about **SIXTY (60)** words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٦٠) كلمة عن:

Construction projects in Egypt

Guiding words

develop - economy

Test 4

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق



	T	F
1. The ancient Egyptians created an amazing invention called the loom.	☐	☐
2. It was a small wooden machine.	☐	☐
3. They used to move threads up and down to build fabric.	☐	☐
4. This loom inspired the modern machines that make our clothes today.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- She saw a huge, bright on the wall that told an ancient story.
 a mural b announcement c blueprint d ticket
- Alexandria is an important city in Egypt, famous for its beautiful beaches.
 a coastal b sandy c desert d modern
- If we our heritage, future generations will appreciate it.
 a protects b protect c protecting d protected
- The new highway connects Cairo and Alexandria is very wide.
 a who b whose c where d which

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

beautify - proud - clarify - plumber - spot

Children found an old, broken fountain in a hidden area of their town. They got a ① to help them fix it. A craftsman also came to ② the area. Now, the fountain is a beautiful tourist ③ This project showed great creativity and made the whole town ④ of their heritage.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Mariam created a bright picture for her school art show using small pieces of paper and plastic. First, she drew a simple design of a sun rising over mountains. Then, she broke old, plastic cups and plates into small **bits**. Mariam used her creativity to combine blue, yellow, and orange pieces. She glued them onto a wooden board to create the image. The final artwork is colorful and shiny. Her teacher said it was a wonderful piece of art. Mariam feels proud because she used her skill to make something beautiful from simple materials.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- Mariam used to create her artwork.

a paint and a canvas	b old cups and plates.
c colorful paper and glue.	d clay and a toothpick.
- The word "bits" is similar in meaning to

a ideas	b designs	c pieces	d drawings
----------------	------------------	-----------------	-------------------

B- Answer the following questions:

- What's the passage about?

- What was the first step Mariam took when starting her art project?

- How did Mariam feel about her final piece of artwork?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- The craftsman is skilled in working with (**neither**) wood and stone.
- He has (**drink**) a glass of milk.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

- history - about - learn - the - **They** - Egypt - of

Tests

2. fuel - use - **Electric** - less - trains - and - buses

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. the smart station is very modern

2. have you ever seen a windmill

8 Write a paragraph of about SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٦٠) كلمة عن:

New and modern transportation systems

Guiding words

monorail - electric

Test 5

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق



1. The storage room was clean and well-organized.

2. Old books covered the floor.

3. The door would clink when it opened and closed.

4. Volunteers were needed to organize the storage room.

T	F
☐	☐
☐	☐
☐	☐
☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

- We should all possible ideas on how to improve this product.
☐ a explore ☐ b ignore ☐ c forget ☐ d break
- A/ An is a moving platform that goes up or down in a building.
☐ a metro ☐ b escalator ☐ c highway ☐ d tunnel
- The old library was neither crowded noisy; it was peaceful and quiet.
☐ a or ☐ b so ☐ c nor ☐ d and
- If the engineer follows the blueprint, he the gadget correctly.
☐ a assembled ☐ b will assemble
☐ c has assembled ☐ d won't assemble

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

invention - explore - self-reliant- gadget- improve

A young inventor works in his workshop. He looks at a blueprint for a new ¹ He wants to assemble a useful ² He works with determination to ³ his design. His goal is to create something that will help his town become ⁴

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

The Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM) is a magnificent cultural place where people visit to see ancient treasures and statues. You can learn there about the history of Egypt through its **impressive** exhibits. The museum contains many beautiful halls and galleries that contain over 100,000 artifacts. Visitors can see the amazing golden mask of King Tutankhamun and other famous artifacts. Visitors also watch videos and join workshops to learn how the ancient Egyptians built temples. After exploring the magnificent design and patterns of the ancient world, visitors often enjoy food in the museum's garden café. They talk about what they saw and take photos of this important part of their heritage.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- The passage is about
☐ a King Tutankhamun's mask ☐ b the museum café
☐ c a cultural place ☐ d building temples
- The word "impressive" means
☐ a weak ☐ b poor ☐ c ordinary ☐ d amazing

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What activities can visitors do at the museum?

4. How many artifacts does the museum have?

5. Why do visitors watch videos and join workshops?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Hanaa has(ride) on an electric monorail.

2. That sculptor(use) carve statues from stone, but now he works with metal.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

1. move- self-driving- cars- do - How - ?

2. heritage - become - world- Wadi El-Hitan - site- a- has

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. clean solar power helps our nation

2. did the experts restore the temple

8 Write a paragraph of about SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٦٠) كلمة عن:

A biography of Mahmoud Mokhtar

Guiding words

talented artist - Nahdit Masr

Test 6

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق

	T	F
1. Eco-friendly vehicles harm the environment.	☐	☐
2. Renewable energy runs out quickly.	☐	☐
3. Petrol and diesel are better for our planet than solar power.	☐	☐
4. Renewable energy comes from natural sources like the sun and wind.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- They can solve their own problems without waiting for help. They are
 a crowded b ancient c self-reliant d lazy
- Long ago, people used to beautiful patterns and figures into stone to make art.
 a carve b transport c generate d announce
- They the Grand Egyptian Museum.
 a aren't visited b haven't visited c not visited d hasn't visited
- You can find the information either on the digital screen in the brochure.
 a or b nor c and d so

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

appreciate - creatures - symbol - museum - incredible

Explorers found a valley full of whale fossils. These ① lived in an ancient ocean. The skeletons were an ② discovery. This place is a natural ③ It reminds us to ④ our planet and to use renewable energy to stop pollution.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Egypt is full of amazing, famous places that people love to visit. The most famous are the ancient Pyramids of Giza, which are huge, old structures.

You can also see the Sphinx there, a giant statue with a human head and a lion's body. In the south, the city of Luxor is like an open museum. It has the massive Karnak Temple and the Valley of the Kings, where ancient pharaohs were buried.

Finally, many people love the beautiful beaches and coral reefs in towns like Sharm El Sheikh, which are perfect for swimming and diving in the Red Sea.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined word "huge" means
 a small b tiny c very big d short
- is known for its beautiful beaches and coral reefs.
 a They Valley of the Kings b Karnak Temple
 c Sharm El Sheikh d The Sphinx

B- Answer the following questions:

- What two historical monuments can you see in Giza?

- What is the main idea of the text?

- What can you do in Sharm El Sheikh?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- Did Samir use (live) in a small village?
- Egypt (become) more self-reliant if it builds more solar powers stations.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

- hundreds - discovered - mummified - Archaeologists - animals - of

- widen - the - plans - roads - The - government - to

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. Is the temple close to nubia

2. they will improve the road network

8 Write a paragraph of about SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٦٠) كلمة عن:

Eco-friendly transportation

Guiding words

renewable energy - reduce pollution

Test 7

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق



1. New Mansoura is an ancient city that is located deep in the desert.

2. The city combines modern life with natural beauty.

3. The city attracts tourists but does not provide homes for Egyptians.

4. New Mansoura reflects Egypt's vision for progress and development.

T	F
☐	☐
☐	☐
☐	☐
☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Tuna el-Gebel was an important site for the ancient Egyptians.
☐ a burial ☐ b skeleton ☐ c industrial ☐ d shopping
2. The company uses local materials to its goods.
☐ a manufacture ☐ b discover ☐ c explore ☐ d announce
3. In the past, the economy depend mainly on farming.
☐ a not used to ☐ b didn't use ☐ c used to ☐ d use to
4. The new coastal city is modern and attractive.
☐ a either ☐ b neither ☐ c both ☐ d so

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

pollution - camera - renewable - eco-friendly - driver

A company invented a new self-driving car. This electric car is ① It does not need a ② and is very safe. The car uses ③ energy. This type of transport can help reduce ④ in our cities and make roads safer for everyone.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My teacher used to be a student at this same school forty years ago. She said the classrooms didn't use to have computers or smart boards. The students used to write all their lessons with pens in notebooks. They used to share textbooks because there didn't use to be enough for everyone. During breaks, children used to play football with a ball made of old cloth. They didn't use to have a nice playground, but they used to have a lot of fun. She says that school used to be very **different**, but the joy of learning was the same.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Students wrote with in the past.
☐ a computers ☐ b smartboards ☐ c pens ☐ d textbooks
2. The opposite of the underlined word "different" is
☐ a simple ☐ b the same ☐ c difficult ☐ d nice

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What's the main idea of the passage?

4. Why did the students share textbooks?

5. What did the students use to do during breaks?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. The Aswan Dam ----- (**whose**) is a massive structure helps control the Nile.

2. What will happen if Ali ----- (**sleep**) late?

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

1. inside - the - digital screens - do - **What** - train - show - the - ?

2. dam - made - of - stone - **The** - is - and - concrete

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. next we assemble the tiny gear

2. Is Spain a country in Europe

8 Write a paragraph of about SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٦٠) كلمة عن:

The Egyptian loom

Guiding words

invention - threads

Test 8

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق



	T	F
1. In the past, people mainly depended on farming.	☐	☐
2. The textile industry helps build roads and bridges.	☐	☐
3. New power sources like solar energy are used today.	☐	☐
4. The changes make Egypt's economy weaker.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Making a from stone is difficult and requires powerful tools.

a sculpture

b blueprint

c pipe

d gear

2. The inside the monorail shows the next station.

a ticket machine

b digital screen

c escalator

d announcement

3. The volunteers have the old library.

a cleans

b clean

c cleaned

d cleaning

4. If we artifacts, we will lose our history.

a aren't preserved

b don't preserve

c preserve

d not preserved

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

valley - trip - improve - appreciate - explorer

We took a trip to the Western Desert. Our guide was an ¹ who knew the area well. We saw amazing rocks and a wide ² We learned to ³ the quiet beauty of the desert. It was an amazing ⁴ that felt like visiting another planet.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

The Saqqara Necropolis جبانة سقارة is a burial site near Cairo, famous for the Step Pyramid, الهرم المدرج the world's oldest stone building. Archaeologists have made amazing discoveries here, including many underground tombs and mummies. The walls inside these tombs are covered with beautiful carvings that show daily life in ancient times. When you walk through this ancient place, you can feel the history all around you. It is an unforgettable place that helps Egyptians feel proud of their country's incredible heritage and long, fascinating history.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- The passage is about
 a Pyramids and carvings b Modern stone building
 c Saqqara's historical importance d Archaeologists' tools
- Saqqara is famous for the, which is known as the world's oldest stone building.
 a Great Sphinx b Red Pyramid c Step Pyramid d Lighthouse

B- Answer the following questions:

- What have archaeologists found at Saqqara?

- Why do you think Egyptians feel proud when they visit Saqqara?

- Summarize the passage in two sentences.

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- People (use/ travel) on narrow, crowded roads before the new highways were built.
- Engineers will (large) the road to reduce traffic.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

- new - projects - infrastructure - started - Egypt - has

- beautiful - canvas - images - Artists - a - create - on

1. my grandmother used to live in a village

2. should passengers listen to train announcements

8 Write a paragraph of about SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٦٠) كلمة عن:

Guiding words

products - self-reliant

[illegible]

Test 9

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق

1. The tomb was found on a busy city street.
2. The walls inside the tomb were covered with carvings and colorful scenes.
3. The researcher made a discovery of a small statue.
4. The tomb had underground corridors and a special chamber.

T	F
☐	☐
☐	☐
☐	☐
☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. A clock uses a pendulum to time accurately.
 a measure b transport c design d explore
2. With hard work and, the country became self-reliant in food production.
 a pollution b determination c traffic d transportation
3. The archaeologist has a hidden burial chamber.
 a finds b find c finding d found
4. The artist painted this mural is very talented.
 a which b whose c where d who

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

encourage - monorail - nation - smart - courage

The New Administrative Capital is a modern symbol of Egypt's future. This ¹ city has skyscrapers, a giant mosque, and a wide green river. Its advanced infrastructure includes an electric ² and places to pay by card for everything. The capital is designed as an eco-friendly zone to ³ business and reduce pollution, creating a new center for the ⁴

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

In a small town, there was an old, broken fountain. A group of volunteers decided to fix it. They called a plumber to look at the **clogged** pipe. As he worked, his tool hit something metal, and **it** clinked. They found an old box hidden in the storage area under the fountain. Inside was a beautiful necklace-a real treasure! The dust was cleaned away, and the fountain sparkled again. The whole town celebrated, happy to have found a piece of history and restored their lovely fountain..

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The volunteers found inside the old box.

a an old tool

b a beautiful necklace

c a new pipe

d a set of keys

2. The underlined word "clogged" means

a blocked

b clean

c flowing

d empty

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What's the main idea of the passage?

.....

4. Where exactly did the group of volunteers find the old box?

.....

5. What does the underlined word "it" refer to?

.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. The students (**not/ finish**) their project if they don't work hard.

2. The textile factory uses (**both**) coal nor gas; it runs on solar power.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

1. keep time - pendulum - helped - the clock - **The** - more accurately.

.....

2. southern - near - **Nubia** - Egypt's - is - border

.....

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. can electric buses reduce pollution in Cairo

2. tourists enjoy taking photos of monuments

8 Write an email of SIXTY(60) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب اي ميل من (٦٠) كلمة عن:

to your friend Dalida to tell her about your visit to an ancient site. Your name is Celine and your email address is celinea@student.com. Your friend's email address is dalida23@gmail.com.

Guiding words

magnificent - remarkable

[illegible]

Test 10

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق

	T	F
1. The Temple of Dakka was moved because it was too crowded with visitors.	☐	☐
2. Roman emperors and rulers used to add carvings to the temple.	☐	☐
3. The temple stood in the middle of a busy city in Nubia.	☐	☐
4. Experts moved the structure to protect it.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

- The archaeologist found a mummy in the
 a library b chamber c windmill d factory
- cars use computers and cameras to move on the roads safely.
 a Self-care b Self-driving c Self-train d Self-saving
- The blueprint the engineer designed was very detailed.
 a who b whose c where d that
- Hala and Mayar each other since they were children.
 a knows b knowing c has known d have known

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

exhibition - palette - paintbrush - creativity - carve

An artist worked for months to create a masterpiece. He used a ① of many colors. He wanted to ② a sculpture for the art gallery. He showed great skill and ③ His final artwork was incredible, and everyone at the art ④ admired it.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Long ago, moving products from one city to another was a big problem. The old roads were too narrow. Now, roads are much better because we have built modern highways and strong bridges.

These new, wide roads let big trucks drive very fast. This helps companies move their products, like food and clothes, quickly and safely. Thanks to these new roads, the traffic becomes faster, which helps everyone.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- What was the main problem with moving goods in the past?
 a The trucks were too big.
 b The old roads were narrow and slow.
 c There was not enough fuel.
 d People didn't need many products.
- Modern highways and bridges help trucks move products
 a slowly and dangerously.
 b only inside one city.
 c quickly and safely.
 d only during the night.

B- Answer the following questions:

- What is the main idea of the text?

- What does the underlined word their refer to?

- Why are roads better now?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- If your dad pays by card, he (save) time.

- My parents (not/ use) study with computers

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

- inventors - built - first - Clever - the - clock

Tests

2. vision - reflects - progress - New Alamein - for - Egypt's

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. the library had many old books

2. Are the Pyramids in giza amazing

8 Write a paragraph of about SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٦٠) كلمة عن:

New inventions

Guiding words

amazing - machine

Test 11

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق



1. Egypt's economy depends mainly on farming, not manufacturing.
2. The country uses old fuel sources, not solar energy.
3. New power supplies create clean power for factories.
4. Innovation in industry helps the country grow stronger.

T	F
☐	☐
☐	☐
☐	☐
☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. At the _____, we saw a huge painting that looked like a window to another world.

- a** art gallery **b** factory **c** stadium **d** hospital

2. The new _____ project includes a highway and modern walkways.

- a** fossil **b** infrastructure **c** farming **d** musical

3. If the government doesn't _____ new schools, villages will face problems in education.

- a** build **b** builds **c** built **d** building

4. Shahenda has _____ the new ticket machine.

- a** tries **b** try **c** trying **d** tried

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

honor - history – pharaohs – attract - statues

Karnak Temple is a huge ancient complex in Luxor. It was built to ① _____ the god Amun and his family. The temple is famous for its very tall columns and large ② _____. Visitors can walk through its big courtyards and imagine the lives of the ③ _____. It is a powerful symbol of Egypt's long ④ _____.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

During the weekend, Ahmed's family spent a wonderful day at Al-Azhar Park in Cairo. They arrived in the morning and walked along the beautiful flowers and trees. The children ran, laughed and played near the dancing fountains. Ahmed's parents found a nice place on the soft grass to relax and talk. Later, the children climbed to the top of the highest hill, where they had a magnificent view of the historic old city, including the famous Citadel. At the end of the day, they had a large picnic with delicious sandwiches, fresh fruit, and cool drinks. It was a peaceful and happy day that everyone in the family enjoyed and would remember for a long time.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The children ran, laughed and played near the dancing _____.

- a** swings **b** fountains **c** trees **d** slides

2. The underlined word "wonderful" means _____.

- a** bad **b** crowded **c** amazing **d** far

Tests

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What's the main idea of the passage?

4. Why do you think the family will remember this day for a long time?

5. Who climbed the top of the hill?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. People (use) to cross the Nile by small boats before modern bridges were built.

2. Both the hospital (or) the school were opened last month.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

1. becoming - the - industrial - strongest - countries - Egypt - is - of - one

2. is- faster - cleaner - The - before - metro - and - than

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. may I pay by card for the ticket

2. yes the machine is very old.

8 Write a paragraph of about SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٦٠) كلمة عن:

A famous place in Egypt

Guiding words

tourist spot - visitors

Test 12

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):



	T	F
1. The student made the blueprint after assembling the machine.	☐	☐
2. The robot runs on solar power.	☐	☐
3. The gadget was the student's best creation.	☐	☐
4. She used small tools for the wheels and voice box.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

- The Aswan Dam was built to stop the river from the land.
 a flooding b selling c appreciating d manufacturing
- The skilled carved beautiful patterns into the stone.
 a researcher b explorer c craftsman d passenger
- The engineer designed the smart bridge works in the New Administrative Capital.
 a who b which c where d whose
- If passengers block the smart doors, the train
 a will start b won't start c not start d don't start

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

announcements - runs - ticket machine - block - card

Egypt is building a smarter future with new transportation. The electric monorail
 ① above the ground, connecting many areas. On the monorail,
 passengers see digital screens and hear clear ② They can pay by
 ③ for tickets. These eco-friendly systems help reduce pollution. For
 safe travel, people must follow the rules and not ④ the smart doors,
 making cities cleaner and more modern.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Far from the noisy streets of modern life, the Temple of Edfu has stood proudly for centuries in Upper Egypt. This grand monument has become a symbol of the long and proud history of the pharaohs. Ancient rulers designed this temple to honor the god Horus. The massive walls are covered with detailed carvings that tell stories.

Today, visitors from around the world walk through its impressive gates and admire the amazing artwork. The preservation of this site shows how Egypt has protected its incredible treasures, making every visitor feel proud of this history.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- The Temple of Edfu is located
☐ a in Northern Egypt near the sea ☐ b in Upper Egypt
☐ c in the Western Desert ☐ d near the modern capital
- Who was the Temple of Edfu built to honor?
☐ a The sun god Ra ☐ b The god Horus
☐ c Greek emperors ☐ d Modern visitors

B- Answer the following questions:

- What is the main idea of the passage?

- What does the underlined pronoun "its" refer to?

- Summarize the paragraph in two sentences.

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- The government has **(build)** many new roads to connect the modern cities.
- **(Either)** the monorail nor the electric bus cause air pollution.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

1. either - clay - paints - Students - with - can - or - work

2. a - Tuna el-Gebel - burial - famous - site - is

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. The statue style came from europe

2. could renewable energy power future cities

8 Write a paragraph of about SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٦٠) كلمة عن:

A new city

Guiding words

lie on - innovation

Test 13

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق



- The carvings on the walls tell stories about Egyptian gods and rulers.
- The temple is located far from the border of Nubia.
- Experts worked to restore the beautiful artwork.
- The tour guide explained the patterns, but the visitors didn't appreciate the history.

T	F
☐	☐
☐	☐
☐	☐
☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

- Developing the railway system will make it easier to goods across the country.
 a transport b design c explore d carve
- The golden mask of Tutankhamun is a true of ancient Egyptian art.
 a masterpiece b gadget
 c announcement d blueprint
- In the past, workers have advanced machines to help in manufacturing.
 a used to b didn't use to c use to d not used to
- If buses are electric, the city cleaner.
 a will be b is c won't be d isn't

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

economy - industry - wind - power - nation

A strong country needs to create its own industrial power. Factories for textile manufacture and the steel ① are very important. They need a ② source , like electricity, to run their machines. By building these industries, a ③ can make its own clothes, build strong buildings, and grow its ④ for a better future.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. the windmill was old and rusty

2. did the students use small tools

8 Write a paragraph of about SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٦٠) كلمة عن:

A short story you read

Guiding words

- What happened at the beginning?
- What is the moral from the story?

Test 14

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق



1. Nora visited a science museum with her class.

2. She saw a golden mask at the museum.

3. She learned about the history of the pharaohs.

4. Nora wants to be a teacher when she grows up.

T	F
☐	☐
☐	☐
☐	☐
☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. A loom moves up and down to create cloth.
 a threads b wheels c bricks d fabrics
2. You can your writing by correcting your mistakes. SB
 a follow b design c improve d innovate
3. the teacher explained the lesson well?
 a Is b Does c Was d Has
4. If people drive electric cars, there less pollution.
 a be b been c will be d won't be

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

invention - gears - workshop - accurate - measure

For years, people used the sun and sand to tell the time. The clockmaker's goal was to design a machine to ¹ time perfectly. His design included a long pendulum and many small ² that fit together. He worked for years to make his clocks more ³ The ⁴ of the clock changed how people lived and worked every day.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Ras El-Hekma is a beautiful coastal area in Egypt, known for its clear blue water and soft sand beaches. Recently, the Egyptian government has announced a huge new project to turn this quiet spot into a modern city for tourism and business. This project is an example of great infrastructure development. Engineers will build new roads, hotels, and parks. The plan will use renewable energy sources like solar power to be eco-friendly. This project shows Egypt's determination to create new tourist spots and provide more jobs. It will help the economy grow and make Egypt a more self-reliant country, proud of its amazing places.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The passage is about
 a beautiful beaches in Egypt b a big new city project
 c how engineers build roads d different kinds of energy
2. The new project uses
 a wind energy b solar power c water energy d natural gas

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What does the underlined pronoun "its" refer to?

4. What will the engineers build in Ras El-Hekma?

5. Why is this project important for Egypt's economy?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. People (not/use) have mobile phones 50 years ago.

2. You can visit either the museum (nor) the studio today.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

1. block- doors- mustn't- smart - Passengers - the

2. exhibition- amazing- visited - We - art- last- month- an

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. the robot runs on solar power

2. Did Ancient Egyptians carve beautiful scenes

8 Write a paragraph of about SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٦٠) كلمة عن:

A short story you read

Guiding words

- What can we see there?
- How do people feel there?

Test 15

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ).

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق



1. The Aswan Dam is a small structure in southern Egypt.
2. The dam was built to generate powerful electricity.
3. The dam is made of wood and metal.
4. Engineers built the dam to protect the land from the flood.

T	F
☐	☐
☐	☐
☐	☐
☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The Grand Egyptian Museum displays many from our history.
 a treasures b corridors c tunnels d tools
2. The government plans to the highway to connect the new industrial city.
 a extend b narrow c carve d destroy
3. If Sama her ticket, she will buy another one.
 a forgets b forget c forgot d forgotten
4. the figure and the frame are very old.
 a Neither b Either c If d Both

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

artwork - patterns - restore - tour guide - discover - prohibited

We visited an old market to see traditional art. Our ① showed us a skilled craftsman. The man knew how to design beautiful carpets with amazing ② It was exciting to ③ how he used colorful threads to create his amazing ④ for everyone to see and buy.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Last month, I experienced the new Cairo Monorail for the first time with my father. We entered the clean, modern station and bought tickets from a machine. The train was quiet and fast as it moved above the city streets. Through the large windows, we saw a fantastic view of the new buildings. My father explained that this electric train helps reduce traffic and pollution. It felt like traveling in the future! I enjoyed the trip so much that I told all my friends at school about this exciting new way to travel around our city.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- The passage is mainly about
☐ a Monorail travel experience ☐ b New traffic solutions
☐ c Electric train views ☐ d Pollution reduction
- To begin their trip, they bought tickets from a
☐ a mall ☐ b clean machine ☐ c market ☐ d security guard

B- Answer the following questions:

- How was the view?

- Summarize the passage in 2 sentences.

- What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- The student (**who**) father is a mechanic fixed the robot.
- What (**does**) the emperor said to his soldiers?

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

- simple - gadget - create - I - wanted - a - to

- ancient - complex - Luxor Temple - a - is - magnificent

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. will the electric bus arrive soon

2. tourists enjoy taking photos of monuments

8 Write an email of FIFTY(60) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب ايميل من (٦٠) كلمة عن:

to tell your friend Shady about your visit to the art gallery. Your name is Mustafa and your email address is mustafa234@gmail.com Your friend's email address is shady2010@student.com.

Guiding words

paintings - carve


New Message

To

From

Subject

:

:

:

Cc

Bcc

Send











AL- Azhar general tests

AL- Azhar

Test 1

1 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ واكمل المحادثة:

invention – wind - assemble - solar - blueprint - gears

Ahmed : Have you assembled your solar robot yet?

Bassem: No, I'm still looking at the ① . Can you help me follow the steps?

Ahmed : Of course. First, we need to connect these small ② .

Bassem: What happens if we don't ③ it correctly?

Ahmed : Then it won't run on ④ power. Let's test it in the sun when we finish.

Bassem: Great! I hope our ⑤ works

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- The students (not/win) the competition if they don't work hard.
- The old library has (either) computers nor digital screens.
- My grandfather (use) be a farmer before he became a teacher.
- That is the archaeologist (who) discovery changed history.
- We have (buy) a new car.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

- The engineer studied the of the new flying car before assembling its parts.
 a blueprint b pendulum c chamber d border
- The country is going to build projects like tunnels and roads.
 a infrastructure b determination c innovation d sculpture
- A/ An is a body that has been preserved for thousands of years.
 a archaeologist b discovery c mummy d chamber
- The passenger listened carefully to the station's to know the next stop.
 a pollution b announcement c elevator d innovation

5. If something is accurate, it is
 a wrong or broken b correct and exact
 c made by hand d very big
6. The computer I bought last week is broken.
 a who b whose c which d whom
7. If you enough sleep, you won't feel tired tomorrow.
 a get b don't get c gets d doesn't get
8. We can either go to the cinema stay at home tonight.
 a and b nor c or d that
9. you ever been to Paris?
 a Has b Are c Do d Have
10. Did you have short hair when you were young?
 a used to b use to c uses to d using to

4 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with a correct word:

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة و استبدلها بكلمة صحيحة:

1	clarify	beautify	simplify	happy	-----
2	valley	desert	coast	statue	-----
3	bus	monorail	train	petrol	-----
4	design	discovery	create	invent	-----
5	encourage	hill	enable	ensure	-----

5 Read and answer the questions:

اقرأ وأجب عن الأسئلة:

In ancient Egypt, the Nile River was the main way for transportation. People built strong wooden boats to carry goods and passengers along the river. On land, Egyptians used donkeys to carry heavy things. To move the huge stones for the pyramids, workers put them on wooden sleds and pulled them over wet sand. This clever system helped move massive blocks for construction. Camels were also important for desert travel, carrying traders and their goods to distant places. These ancient methods show the creativity and skill of Egyptian people in solving transportation challenges long ago.

A: Write true (T) or false (F):

	T	F
1. The Nile River was the main way for transportation in ancient Egypt.	☐	☐
2. Workers used donkeys to pull very large stones for the pyramid construction.	☐	☐
3. They used wooden sleds and wet sand to move massive blocks.	☐	☐

B: Choose the correct answer:

4. Egyptians used to carry heavy things on land.

a camels

b donkeys

c boats

d sleds

5. Camels were mainly used for

a pulling sleds

b carrying water

c carrying traders and goods

d building pyramids

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥) جمل عن:

A school trip to a museum

Guiding words

artifacts - ancient - impressive - learned - proud

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ واكمل المحادثة:

mummified - beautiful - plumbers - chambers - carvings - archaeologists

Anas: What is this place famous for?

Rayan: It's a burial site with many underground 1

Anas: Have 2 made any discoveries here?

Rayan: Yes, they found hundreds of 3 animals.

Anas: What are those 4 pictures on the wall?

Rayan: Those are 5 that show scenes from ancient Egyptian life.

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. If Hossam (study) hard, he will pass the exam.
2. The Nile River, (whose) flows through Egypt, is very long.
3. The new park has both a playground (or) a fountain.
4. (Is) Shahenda visited her grandparents recently?
5. I (not/ use) wake up early when I was a student.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. You don't need cash anymore; you can quickly and safely.
a link roads b manufacture c pay by card d restore
2. The artist mixed colors carefully on her before starting the mural on the school wall.
a sculpture b palette c sketch d canvas
3. The beautiful shapes on the walls show a wonderful
a machine b corridor c pattern d engine
4. This new helps me to find things faster.
a gadget b pendulum c gear d blueprint
5. The teacher wants to students to read more.
a courage b encouraged c encourage d encouraging

Tests

6. When I was young, I to school every day.
 a walk b walking c use to walk d used to walk
7. My little brothers finished their homework.
 a are b were c has d have
8. my sister nor my brother can drive a car.
 a Both b Either c Neither d So
9. That's the artist painting sold for a million dollars.
 a who b which c whose d whom
10. If you listen carefully, you the lesson.
 a will understand b understands c understood d understanding

4 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with a correct word:

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة:

1	wide	narrow	fabric	soft	-----
2	measure	store	tell	bridge	-----
3	eco-friendly	electric	rusty	temple	-----
4	canvas	sculpture	creative	painting	-----
5	stone	wood	loom	metal	-----

5 Read and answer the questions:

اقرأ وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Last summer, I visited Alexandria, a major coastal city on the Mediterranean Sea. The city has wide walkways and sandy beaches. You can see the modern library and the old citadel, which is a historic monument. Visitors can walk along the sea, eat fresh fish, and watch the colorful boats. The sunlight on the water looks bright and beautiful. I felt the city was peaceful and enchanting. It is a special place that mixes old heritage with modern life, and it made me feel proud of Egypt's history.

A: Write true (T) or false (F):

	T	F
1. Alexandria is a desert city located far from the Mediterranean Sea.	☐	☐
2. The city mixes old heritage with modern life.	☐	☐
3. The visitor felt the city was noisy and crowded.	☐	☐

B: Choose the correct answer:

4. The boats were

- a** white **b** brown **c** colorful **d** rusty

5. The visitors can see the old _____.

- a** temple **b** citadel **c** pyramid **d** tomb

6 Write an email of FIVE (5) sentences to your friend to tell him about a project you are doing.

اكتب بريد اليكترونى من (٥) جمل عن:

Your name is Karma and your email address is karma13@yahoo.com.

Your friend's name is Adham and his email address is adham@gmail.com

Guiding words

design - invention- assemble - tools- improve

New Message

To: Cc Bcc

From:

Subject:

Send

Text formatting icons: underline, link, camera, video, smiley face, trash can, dropdown arrow.

اقرأ واكمل المحادثة:

Mariam: How can I pay for the monorail ticket?

Laila : You can pay by card at that ❶ _____

Mariam: ② ----- can I see the route map?

Laila : Look at the ③ _____ over there. It shows all the stops.

Mariam: Are there elevators in the 4 _____?

Laila : Yes, and ⑤ _____ too, for easy access.

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. People plant trees to _____ **(rich)** the soil.
2. _____ **(Have)** you use to watch cartoons when you were young?
3. If it _____ **(be)** cold, we will stay at home.
4. You can either stay here _____ **(and)** come with us.
5. We have never _____ **(see)** that movie.

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The shopping center is bright at night because it uses energy-saving _____ everywhere.

b LED lights

 power sources

2. During the excavation, the _____ was thrilled to find a beautifully decorated ancient tomb.

 archaeologist  sculptor

3. The country continues to _____ its road network every year.



4. The clock's _____ moved slowly from side to side, keeping time accurate.

 pendulum

5. The Temple of Dakka is an ancient that has stood for thousands of years.
a border **b** monument **c** carvings **d** invention
6. The book I read yesterday was very interesting.
a who **b** whose **c** which **d** whom
7. He watch television all day when he was sick.
a use to **b** used to **c** using to **d** uses to
8. If they miss the train, they on time.
a won't arrive **b** will arrive
c wouldn't arrive **d** haven't arrived
9. my parents and my grandparents speak English.
a Who **b** Either **c** Both **d** Neither
10. Has Nada the invitations?
a sends **b** send **c** sending **d** sent

4 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with a correct word:

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة:

1	paintbrush	palette	announcement	canvas	-----
2	invention	create	design	assemble	-----
3	darken	lighten	deepen	school	-----
4	gadget	tool	hammer	draw	-----
5	build	write	pendulum	use	-----

5 Read and answer the questions:

اقرأ وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Egypt's ancient art continues to inspire people all over the world today. Artists look at old artifacts, carvings, and paintings to create new masterpieces. Archaeologists work hard to preserve and restore these precious treasures. They discover hidden tombs and protect our heritage. Young people can also help. They can visit museums, join workshops, and learn traditional skills like pottery. By appreciating and learning from the past, everyone can help keep Egypt's incredible culture alive for future generations.

A: Write true (T) or false (F):

	T	F
1. Artists look at old artifacts and carvings to create new masterpieces today.	☐	☐
2. Archaeologists mainly destroy tombs rather than preserve them.	☐	☐
3. Young people can help keep the culture safe by joining workshops.	☐	☐

Tests

B: Choose the correct answer:

4. Archaeologists work hard to preserve

a sand

b treasures

c tools

d devices

5. According to the passage, young people can learn

a sculpting

b pottery

c carving

d painting

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥) جمل عن:

Modern transportation in Egypt

Guiding words

monorail - eco-friendly - passengers - digital screens - infrastructure

AL- Azhar

Test 4

1 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ واكمل المحادثة:

innovate - tunnels - faster - reduce - infrastructure - transport

Seif : What are they building in this area?

Murad: They're extending the highway to ① traffic.

Seif : What other ② projects are planned?

Murad: They'll build new bridges and ③ too.

Seif : How will this help ④ goods?

Murad: It will make it ⑤

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. The athlete (**whose**) won the race is from Kenya.
2. The restaurant serves (**either**) Italian and Chinese food.
3. (**Is**) she read the message yet?
4. If you drive too fast, you (**have**) an accident.
5. Salma didn't use to (**likes**) vegetables when she was a child.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The modern building has that open and close automatically.
☐ a construction ☐ b smart doors ☐ c textiles ☐ d industries
2. To is to put parts together to make a whole.
☐ a assemble ☐ b improve ☐ c invent ☐ d restore
3. Many have built the temple for the god Thoth. SB
☐ a borders ☐ b roles ☐ c rules ☐ d rulers
4. Engineers are working on a new
☐ a painting ☐ b highway ☐ c market ☐ d recipe
5. The artist mixed the colors on the before starting to paint the large wall.
☐ a gear ☐ b pendulum ☐ c blueprint ☐ d palette
6. The student project won first prize is very smart.
☐ a who ☐ b which ☐ c whose ☐ d whom
7. People write letters before email was invented.
☐ a used to ☐ b use to ☐ c using to ☐ d uses to
8. I a letter from my friend.
☐ a has received ☐ b have received ☐ c not receive ☐ d receives :bo
9. You can either write your answer in pen in pencil. :forda
☐ a nor ☐ b or ☐ c and ☐ d that
10. you call me if you have time?
☐ a Have ☐ b Do ☐ c Are ☐ d Will

Tests

4 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with a correct word:

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة و استبدلها بكلمة صحيحة:

1	park	ancient	walkways	fountain	-----
2	teacher	purify	baker	driver	-----
3	ancient	temple	cultural	historical	-----
4	monorail	electric bus	solar car	windmill	-----
5	Cairo	pendulum	Alexandria	Giza	-----

5 Read and answer the questions:

اقرأ وأجب عن الأسئلة:

In southern Egypt, you can visit the amazing Temple of Philae. This beautiful monument sits on an island. It is special because experts moved it stone by stone to save it from the water. Visitors can take a boat to the island. There, they can walk through the grand halls and see the ancient carvings on the walls. The scenes show gods and famous rulers. The sunlight on the stone looks wonderful. It is a peaceful and magical place that shows the skill of the ancient builders.

A: Write true (T) or false (F):

	T	F
1. The Temple of Philae is located on an island.	☐	☐
2. The temple was moved to save it from the desert sand.	☐	☐
3. The carvings on the walls show scenes of modern cities.	☐	☐

B: Choose the correct answer:

4. What can visitors see on the temple walls?

☐ a Modern paintings

☐ b Ancient carvings

☐ c Digital screens

☐ d Colorful posters

5. In the text, what does the underlined word "ancient" mean?

☐ a New and modern

☐ b Very old

☐ c Small and beautiful

☐ d Bright and colorful

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥) جمل عن:

Renewable energy in Egypt

Guiding words

solar power - windmill - electricity - pollution - future

AL- Azhar

Test 5

1 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ واكمل المحادثة:

ancient – artifacts- carve -sculpture -masterpiece –preserve

Nelly: What's the most amazing artifact in this museum?

Sofia: The golden mask of Tutankhamun is the true ¹ ----- here.

Nelly: How old are these ² ----- ?

Sofia: They're from ³ ----- Egypt, over 3,000 years old!

Nelly: Can visitors take photographs?

Sofia: Yes, but without flash to ⁴ ----- the artifacts.

Nelly: What's that large statue in the corner?

Sofia: That's a ⁵ ----- of Ramses II, a great pharaoh.

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I ----- (**use**) eat spicy food, but now I love it.

2. Omar hasn't ----- (**write**) the report.

3. What will happen if she ----- (**miss**) the bus?

4. That's the businessman ----- (**that**) company is very successful.

5. ----- (**Both**) Sarah nor her sister can attend the meeting.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

- The young artist's of a lion looked so real that everyone was amazed by this talented sculptor.
☐ a invention ☐ b mural ☐ c sculpture ☐ d monument
- The ancient Egyptians used the loom to make
☐ a jewelry ☐ b fabrics ☐ c tools ☐ d furniture
- You can easily buy a metro ticket from the without waiting in line.
☐ a ticket machine ☐ b LED lights ☐ c smart doors ☐ d facility
- The girls made a large on the walls of the school.
☐ a canvas ☐ b mural ☐ c palette ☐ d paintbrush
- Before modern highways, transporting between cities was slow and difficult.
☐ a goods ☐ b skeletons ☐ c ideas ☐ d messages
- If he saves enough money, he a new bicycle.
☐ a buys ☐ b buy ☐ c will buy ☐ d would buy
- He never tried Chinese food.
☐ a is ☐ b does ☐ c will ☐ d has
- The mountain we climbed was very high.
☐ a who ☐ b whose ☐ c which ☐ d whom
- They used to in a small apartment before moving here.
☐ a live ☐ b lives ☐ c lived ☐ d living
- Both the teacher the students were happy with the test results.
☐ a and ☐ b nor ☐ c that ☐ d or

4 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with a correct word:

اقرأ و ضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة و استبدلها بكلمة صحيحة:

1	enlarge	enrich	enable	book	-----
2	Greek	Roman	Egypt	Chinese	-----
3	highway	bridge	Sphinx	tunnel	-----
4	paint	carve	draw	pottery	-----
5	black	yellow	narrow	white	-----

5 Read and answer the questions: اقرأ وأجب عن الأسئلة:

The ancient Egyptians were clever to make the first paper from a plant. This specific plant grew easily near the Nile River. To create the writing material, they would cut the plant and then press it flat. After shaping it, they let it dry in the sun.

This amazing process resulted in papyrus paper. People then wrote stories and laws on it using ink. Papyrus was strong and easy to carry, which meant it greatly helped people share ideas. This invention changed how people communicated, and we can still see old papyrus in museums today.

A: Write true (T) or false (F):

	T	F
1. Papyrus grew near the Nile River.	☐	☐
2. The ancient Egyptians used fire to dry the papyrus sheets.	☐	☐
3. Papyrus paper was heavy and difficult to carry.	☐	☐

B: Choose the correct answer:

4. What did people write on papyrus paper?

- ☐ a Songs and poems
 ☐ b Stories and laws
☐ c Recipes and menus
 ☐ d Maps and plans

5. In the text, what does the word "specific" mean?

- ☐ a A special or particular one
 ☐ b A very tall plant
☐ c Something very old
 ☐ d A type of food

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥) جمل عن:

Egypt's new cities

Guiding words

coastal - modern - walkways - tourist spot - vision

Listening Material



نصوص الاستماع الواردة في كراسة التدريبات

نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بأسئلة الاستماع
الواردة في كراسة التدريبات والاختبارات

Unit 1

Test Unit 1

- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

People visit the museum to see the treasures. They learn about the history of Egypt. The museum has many halls and galleries. Families can enjoy food in the café. They talk and can take photos.

Test Unit 2

- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

Omar was a talented young engineer. He made an amazing invention. The robot runs on solar power. The wheels move when you place it in the sun. It is a fun way to explore new ideas.

Test Unit 3

- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

The Temple of Dakka has stood for many years in Nubia. It is a symbol of Egypt's proud history. The temple once stood close to the River Nile. Experts restored it.

Test Unit 4

- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

Luxor Temple is a magnificent ancient complex in the city of Luxor. It was built to honor the god Amun. The temple is known for its giant statues. Visitors can

walk through its grand gates

Test Unit 5

- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

Egypt is changing the way people travel. If these new transportations systems continue to grow in Cairo, the cities will become faster and cleaner. The monorail has a single track above the ground.

General Tests

Test 1

- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

The artist used to work in his studio every day. He loved to paint colorful murals and paintings on canvas. He used to mix his own colors on a palette with a paintbrush. He didn't use to listen to music while he worked, because he needed to focus. His final piece of art showed great talent and creativity. He used to say that art was never boring or difficult.

Test 2

At the smart station, passengers can buy tickets from a ticket machine. They see train times on digital screens. There are elevators for people with bags and escalators for others. Announcements tell passengers when the train arrives. People must keep the station clean and must not leave trash. This makes travel easy and pleasant for everyone.

The station is part of Egypt's modern transportation.

Test 3

Omar is a talented student who loves art. For the school project, he decided to create a sculpture. He used wood and special tools to carve a figure. He worked with great skill to make the surface smooth. His teacher said his work was creative and impressive. Omar felt very proud. He will display his artwork at the school exhibition next week for all the visitors to see.

Test 4

The ancient Egyptians created an amazing invention called the loom. The loom was a huge wooden machine used to make cloth and blankets. The process required great skill from the workers. They used to move threads up and down to build fabric. This loom inspired the modern machines that make our clothes today. It was a very useful creation for the whole country.

Test 5

The school storage room was a messy place. Piles of old textbooks were placed on the floor. Everything was covered with a layer of dust. The heavy metal door would creak loudly every time it opened. A sign read: "Volunteers needed to organize this room!" They needed to clear the path, which was almost clogged with broken furniture and old equipment.

Test 6

Many new vehicles are becoming eco-friendly, meaning they do not harm the environment. They use renewable energy to power their transportation. Renewable energy comes from natural sources like the sun and wind. It never runs out and is much better than petrol or diesel. If countries use renewable energy, they can protect Earth for future generations.

Test 7

New Mansoura is a modern coastal city in northern Egypt. It lies on the Mediterranean coast and has wide walkways and green parks. The city has tall buildings, shopping centers, and cultural areas. It combines modern life with natural beauty. New Mansoura provides homes for many Egyptians and attracts tourists. It reflects Egypt's vision for progress and development. The city is a lively and attractive place for families.

Test 8

In the past, people depended on farming. Today, Egypt has developed many industries. The textile industry produces clothes and fabrics. The steel industry helps build roads and bridges. New power sources like solar energy are used. These changes make Egypt more self-reliant. Factories create jobs for people. Egypt's economy is growing stronger.

Test 9

A famous archaeologist made a big discovery at an enchanting site in the desert. It was a mysterious tomb with long underground corridors. The tomb walls were covered with amazing carvings and scenes. Inside a special chamber, they found hundreds of mummified animals. A researcher said the tomb helps us travel back in time. This unforgettable heritage makes Egyptians feel proud.

Test 10

The Temple of Dakka stood for a long time in Nubia. It became a symbol of Egypt's long history. The temple used to be close to the Nile River. To protect this treasure, Egyptian experts had to move the structure to higher ground. Roman emperors used to add new carvings to the temple over time. Now, visitors can walk through the tall gate.

Test 11

Egypt is working to develop its economy and become more self-reliant. The country now manufactures many high-quality products, contributing to growth. New power supplies like solar and wind energy are used to create clean power for factories and homes. This innovation helps the country grow stronger. The new industrial zones reflect a modern approach to development.

Test 12

A clever student wanted to create a talking robot. She drew a blueprint with all the parts. Then she started to assemble the machine. She used small tools to

connect the wheels and voice box. Her invention could run on solar power. After testing, the robot said "hello!" This exciting gadget was her best creation. She felt very proud of this useful product.

Test 13

At the ancient temple, visitors can see amazing carvings on the walls. These carvings tell stories about Egyptian gods and rulers. A tour guide explained the patterns and their meanings. The temple is near the border of Nubia. Experts worked to restore the beautiful artwork. Everyone should appreciate this important part of history. It shows the skill of ancient artists.

Test 14

Nora visited the Grand Egyptian Museum with her class. She saw many ancient artifacts and treasures. The golden mask was her favorite. She learned about the history of the pharaohs in a large hall. Nora and her friends joined a workshop where they learned to create patterns on clay. She felt very inspired by the trip. Nora told her mother she wishes she could be an archaeologist when she grows up.

Test 15

The Aswan Dam is a huge structure in southern Egypt. Engineers built it to protect the land from the Nile flood. The dam is made of strong stone and concrete. It was built to generate powerful electricity for homes and factories. The dam gives Egypt a clean supply of power. This modern building completely changed Egypt's future